Townsend Press 英语词汇学习丛书

VOCABULARY BASICS

英语词汇入门

美国大学生中
使用最多的
词汇丛书!



Judith Nadell • Beth Johnson • Paul Langan

上海外语教育出版社
外教社 SHANGHAI FOREIGN LANGUAGE EDUCATION PRESS

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

英语词汇入门／(美)纳代尔(Nadell, J.)等编著.
—上海：上海外语教育出版社，2005
(英语词汇学习丛书)

ISBN 7-81095-455-5

I. 英… II. 纳… III. 英语—词汇 IV. H313

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2004）第 109369 号

出版发行：上海外语教育出版社
（上海外国语大学内） 邮编：200083
电　　话：021-65425300（总机）
电子邮箱：bookinfo@sflep.com.cn
网　　址：http://www.sflep.com.cn　http://www.sflep.com
责任编辑：王彤福

印　　刷：上海出版印刷有限公司
经　　销：新华书店上海发行所
开　　本：850×1168　1/16　印张 12.75　字数 345千字
版　　次：2005 年 6月 第 1版　2006 年 10月 第 2次印刷
印　　数：5 000 册

书　　号：ISBN 7-81095-455-5 / H・153
定　　价：23.00 元

本版图书如有印装质量问题，可向本社调换

出版前言

学习任何一门语言，词汇学习是其中的基础工程和关键部分。掌握尽可能多的单词词组，是每个语言学习者孜孜以求的目标。然而我们经常听到的声音是：单词太难记了！

市场上介绍单词记忆法或是词汇学习方法的书可谓俯拾皆是，提到的方法又是林林总总五花八门，词根词缀法、联想记忆法等等，不一而足。有没有一种更有趣更有效的学习词汇的方法呢？在此我们谨把美国大学生中用得最多最广的一套词汇学习丛书推介给大家。

该丛书由美国Townsend Press出版，我社原版引进，并根据中国学习者特点做了些改编。与时下图书介绍的单词记忆方法不同，该丛书的作者们倡导的是根据认知原理，通过积极学习（active learning）来熟悉掌握单词的方法。具体步骤是：首先，作者把要介绍的8个或者10个生词置于两道练习题中，让学习者通过语境，利用单词所在上下文中的例证、同义词、反义词等线索，推测（infer）或是猜测（guess）生词的意义。其次，就是通过大量的、反复的、多类型的练习，帮助学习者由推测或猜测词义，通过搭配练习（matching words with definitions）来识别词义（identify each word's meaning），通过完成句子、同义、反义或是类比（analogy）关系选择以及完形填空等练习，让学习者不断接触该生词并在各种场合中不断运用它，从而达到理解、巩固、掌握并最终自然而然地记忆单词的目的。在整个过程中，学习者是一个积极主动的参与者，而不是一个被动的记忆者。

除了上述主张的记忆方法不同，本套书还有以下特色：

(1) **Words-in-Context Approach:** 本套书中的每个章节首先把要介绍的8个或10个生词通过练习题的形式介绍给读者，让读者通过上下文，猜测词义、熟悉词义并作出选择。

(2) **Abundant Exercises:** 词义熟悉之后，编写者设置了大量的、各种类型的练习，包括词义搭配、选择题、完型填空等，加深巩固该章节中所介绍的8个或10个单词。每五六个章节组成一个单元，除了章节中的练习外，每一单元中还设有阶段复习性练习题，以巩固该单元中所介绍的所有词汇。

(3) **Focus on Essential Words:** 读者看到书后，很自然地就会问为什么每本书中只讲述了250或300个单词呢？每本书前言部分对这一问题作了回答：编写者做了大量的调查，参考词频信息，运用电脑对所选词汇进行复核，最后确定了每一阶段的基本词汇。书中列出的也是这些

基本词汇的最常用意义。参照我国英语教学要求，六本书中 *Vocabulary Basics* 所涉及词汇与我国高中及非英语专业一年级相当、*Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary* 所涉及词汇与我国非英语专业四级水平相当（4200 词汇水平）、*Building Vocabulary Skills* 所涉及词汇与我国非英语专业六级、英语专业低年级相当（6500 词汇水平）、*Improving Vocabulary Skills* 所涉及词汇与我国英语专业一二年级相当（8000 词汇水平）、*Advancing Vocabulary Skills* 所涉及词汇与我国英语专业高年级相当（12000 词汇水平）、*Advanced Word Power* 所涉及词汇与我国英语专业高年级及以上水平相当。

(4) **Appealing Content:** 单纯的死记硬背单词十分枯燥，而且效果也不一定好。本丛书除了上述三个特色外，在练习内容的选择上也颇费心思。练习题内容饶有趣味，能吸引读者，让读者在记忆单词的同时，还能巩固语言知识。

(5) **A Comprehensive Vocabulary Program:** 本系列 6 本图书，相互联系，按照由易到难排列，读者学完一本以后，可以继续学习更高层次的几本，不断挑战自己。

(6) **User-friendly Format:** 为便于读者的学习，图书在版式设计上也颇费心思，让读者使用方便。

最后，我们衷心希望广大读者通过这套书的系统学习，不再觉得英语单词很难记忆。其实只要方法对了，记单词是一个很有趣、很有成就感的过程。

上海外语教育出版社

Contents

Note: For ease of reference, the titles of the reading selections in each chapter are included.

UNIT FOUR

UNIT FIVE

APPENDIXES

Preface

The problem is all too familiar: *students just don't know enough words.* Reading, writing, and content teachers agree that many students' vocabularies are inadequate for the demands of courses. Weak vocabularies limit students' understanding of what they read and the clarity and depth of what they write.

The purpose of *Vocabulary Basics* and the other books in the Townsend Press vocabulary series is to provide a solid, workable answer to the vocabulary problem. In the course of 30 Chapters, *Vocabulary Basics* teaches 240 important words — the words that students need to get ahead in today's competitive world. Here are the book's distinctive features:

1 **An intensive words-in-context approach.** Studies show that students learn words best by encountering them repeatedly in different contexts, not through rote memorization. The book gives students a concentrated in-context experience by presenting each new word in *six different settings.* Each chapter takes students through a productive sequence of steps:

- Students infer the meaning of each word by considering two sentences in which it appears and then choosing from multiple-choice options.
- On the basis of their inferences, students identify each word's meaning in a matching test. They are then in a solid position to deepen their knowledge of a word.
- Finally, they strengthen their understanding of a word by applying it in four different words-in-context practices, including sentence-completion activities and high-interest fill-in-the-blank passages.

Each encounter with a word brings it closer to becoming part of the student's permanent word bank.

2 **Abundant and varied practice.** Along with extensive practice in each chapter, unit tests at the end of every six chapters provide students with *three additional chances* to work with the words in a unit. By the end of the book, then, students will have worked with each new word *ten times.* Moreover, Chapters 2 through 30 repeat words from earlier chapters (such repeated words are marked with small circles like this°), allowing for even more reinforcement. Many unit activities — for example, synonym and antonym practices and crossword puzzles — are completely different from those found in the chapters. This variety keeps students motivated and ensures their mastery of the words. All this practice makes it possible for students to learn in the best possible way: by working closely and repeatedly with the new words.

3 **Focus on essential words.** A good deal of time went into selecting the 240 words featured in the book. We started by consulting word frequency lists, along with lists in a wide range of vocabulary books. In addition, each of us — as well as our editors — prepared a list of words. A computer was used to consolidate these word lists. Then a long process of group discussion led to final decisions about the words that would be most helpful for students working at a basic level.

4 **Sensitivity to students' needs.** The book gives careful attention to the special needs of basic students.

- Recognizing that basic students often have difficulty processing long sentences and paragraphs, we have kept sentence structure uncomplicated and paragraphs brief.
- Whenever a word has multiple meanings (for example, *delicate,* meaning "easily broken" or "requiring care and skill"), we use the meaning that basic students are most likely to encounter and thus find helpful. (In this case, the meaning "easily broken" is the one we use.)
- Many basic students have difficulty with verbs: they have trouble remembering the correct form of the third-person singular in the present tense and the correct endings of the past and progressive tenses. Their tendency is to omit, respectively, the *-s, -ed,* and *-ing* endings. For example, when adding a new verb, such as *insist*, to their vocabulary, they will often write (and sometimes say), "*My friend always *insist* I drive when we go out," "*Last night, I *insist* that we buy a new radio" and "*I got tired of *insist* that my kids clean their rooms." So in the "Eight Words in Context" section, whenever a new word is a verb, we usually provide the verb's base form (*insist*) in the first sentence and the third-person singular present tense, past tense, or progressive form in subsequent sentences. Through repeated exposure, students become familiar with the correct way to form verbs.
- To dispel students' belief that the words in *Vocabulary Basics* are removed from their everyday lives, we deliberately use the second-person point of view in many of the book's activities and passages. Seeing unfamiliar words in material that refers to "you" helps students see the relevance of the words to their own lives.

5 **Appealing content.** Dull practice exercises work against learning, while relevant, lively, even humorous materials grab students' attention and enhance learning. For this reason, we put considerable effort into creating activities and passages with widespread appeal. Throughout, we have tried to make the material enjoyable for teachers and students alike.

6 **Clear format.** *Vocabulary Basics* has been designed so that its very format contributes to the learning process. Each chapter consists of two two-page spreads. In the first two-page spread (see pages 8–9), students can easily refer to all eight new words when completing the matching activity. In the second two-page spread (see pages 10–11), students can refer to a box that shows all eight words while working on the "Sentence Check 1", "Sentence Check 2" activities and so on.

7 **One in a sequence of books.** *Vocabulary Basics* is the most fundamental book in the Townsend Press vocabulary series. It is followed by *Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary* (a slightly more advanced basic text), *Building Vocabulary Skills* (an even more advanced basic text), *Improving Vocabulary Skills* (an intermediate text), and *Advancing Vocabulary Skills* (a more advanced text). The most advanced book in the Townsend Press vocabulary series is *Advanced Word Power*. Together, the books create a comprehensive vocabulary program that will make any student a better reader, writer, and thinker.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

A number of people provided valuable assistance as the three of us worked on *Vocabulary Basics*. Our thanks go to Susan G. Hamson, whose word-processing abilities eased the demands of the project. Eliza Comodromos assisted at the very end by fine-tuning some of the questions and activities. Susan Gamer helped by drafting several sets of lively practice materials and by proofreading the completed manuscript. We appreciate as well the extraordinary design, editing, and proofreading skills of the multi-talented Janet M. Goldstein. Final thanks go to Carole Mohr, co-author of the other books in the Townsend Press vocabulary series. Her rigorous and insightful editing identified the changes that were needed to make the book as helpful as possible to students.

Judith Nadell
Beth Johnson
Paul Langan



vocabularies feel they don't have what it takes to do well in today's world. They may sit quietly in the back of the classroom, nervous about joining in. They may hear about an interesting job opening but be afraid to apply. Having a strong vocabulary helps you feel you have what it takes to make your life better. In other words, having a strong vocabulary helps you build confidence. What is *confidence*? It is the belief that you can do things you used to think you would never be able to do.

Now you know why it is so important to have a good vocabulary. The next few pages tell how this book will help you build a strong vocabulary — one that can unlock doors that used to be tightly closed.

HOW *VOCABULARY BASICS* IS DIFFERENT FROM OTHER BOOKS

The way most books try to build vocabulary is by asking students to memorize lists of words. But people usually forget memorized lists quickly. To learn a word really well, you must see and use it a number of times. *Vocabulary Basics* gives you the chance to use the new words in each chapter *six different ways*. By the end of each chapter, you will easily remember what the new words mean because you will have used them so many times.

UNDERSTANDING EACH CHAPTER

Now turn to the first chapter in the book, on pages 8–11. This chapter, like all the others (except for the unit reviews), has six parts. Each part is described below.

1. Eight Words in Context

The first part of the chapter (see pages 8–9) is called "Eight Words in Context." The left-hand column lists eight **boldfaced** words. Underneath, you are shown with IPA how to say, or *pronounce*, each boldfaced word.

After showing how to say the boldfaced word, the chapter gives the word's *part of speech*. What part of speech is *agreement*? It is a *noun*. The vocabulary words in this book are mostly *nouns, adjectives,* and *verbs*. **Nouns** are words used to name something — a person, place, thing, or idea. The words *boyfriend*, *city*, *hat*, and *truth* are all nouns. **Adjectives** are words that describe nouns, as in the following word pairs: *old* boyfriend, *large* city, *red* hat, *whole* truth. Many of the words in this book are **verbs**, words that show action. They tell what someone or something is doing. The words *ask*, *buy*, *drive*, *learn*, and *sing* are all verbs.

To the right of each boldfaced word are two sentences that will help you understand its meaning. And below the sentences are three possible meanings for the boldfaced word. From among the three choices, you select the answer that has the closest meaning to that of the boldfaced word. In each sentence, the other words near the boldfaced word — the *context* — will give clues that help you figure out the meaning of the boldfaced word. There are four kinds of context clues: *examples, words with similar meanings, words with opposite meanings*, and *the meaning of the sentence as a whole.* Each kind of context clue is described below.

Introduction

WHY A GOOD VOCABULARY MATTERS

At one time or another, you have probably heard someone say, "It's important to have a good vocabulary." Wanting to be polite, you may have agreed. But perhaps you really wanted to ask, *"Why* is having a good vocabulary important?" Here are five reasons why.

1 **Knowing a lot of words makes it easier for you to understand others and for others to understand you.** Have you ever had trouble following what someone else was saying? Maybe you found it hard to understand a television news report. Perhaps you could not understand a doctor's instructions for completing a medical form. Maybe you could not figure out what family members meant when they talked about an election. If you are like most people, you probably got upset when you didn't understand what was being said.

It can also be difficult to tell others what you are thinking and feeling when you don't know enough words. Maybe the words will not come when you are writing a letter to a sick neighbor. Perhaps you have a hard time explaining to relatives why you were hurt by something they did. Maybe you have trouble telling friends why you are so excited about your new apartment.

As your vocabulary gets larger, you will not have to work so hard to understand others — or to make others understand you. That, in turn, will make your life much easier.

2 **A good vocabulary is the key to understanding what you read.** If you don't know enough words, you are going to have trouble figuring out the meaning of what you read. One or two words whose meanings you don't know may not stop you. However, if there are many words you don't know, it will be hard for you to understand what you read. With a strong vocabulary, you will get more out of newspapers, magazines, books — or anything else you want to read.

3 **A large vocabulary can help you score higher on tests.** Vocabulary is an important part of many tests — for example, college entrance exams and the TOEFL and GRE exams. Why is that? It's because the people who make up these exams know that vocabulary helps measure what you already know and how easily you can learn new information in the future. The more words you know, the better you will do on these exams.

4 **A solid vocabulary will help you do better in school and at work.** Knowing many words makes you a better reader, writer, speaker, listener, and thinker. These are the skills you need to do well in the classroom and on the job. In school, having a good vocabulary helps you understand your textbooks, classmates, and teachers. And in the world of work, a good vocabulary counts as never before. More and more, workers are being asked to change jobs and learn new skills. Knowing how to learn quickly is the key to doing well in this fast-changing world. A good vocabulary makes it easier for you to understand new ideas so you can get ahead on the job — and stay there.

5 **A strong vocabulary helps you believe in yourself.** Sometimes people who don't have large

- **Examples**

A sentence may have *examples* that help explain the meaning of the boldfaced word. For instance, take a look at the following sentence (from Chapter 1) and note how the examples (in *italics*) help explain the meaning of the word **agreement**:

> After fighting for hours, the little girls made an **agreement** *to share their toys.*

The sentence gives an example of an agreement — sharing toys. To figure out what **agreement** means, think about the example. What would it mean if two children said they would share their toys? Now look at the three answer choices below. On the answer line to the left, write the letter of the answer you think is right.

> ___ *Agreement* means   a. fight   b. question   c. promise

The examples make it clear that the two girls have made a *promise* to each other, so *c* is the correct answer.

- **Words with Similar Meanings**

Words with the *same* or *almost the same* meaning are called **synonyms**. For example, the words *joyful, happy,* and *pleased* are synonyms because they all mean about the same thing. Synonyms often give clues about the meaning of a nearby unknown word. Look at the following sentence (from Chapter 1) and note how the synonym (in *italics*) helps explain the meaning of the word **prepare**:

> Last year, I **prepared** all kinds of interesting dishes for our holiday dinner. But this year, I'm going to relax and let someone else *make* the meal.

Instead of using *prepare* again in the second sentence, the writer uses the synonym *make*. Now choose the letter of the right answer.

> ___ *Prepare* means   a. get ready   b. watch   c. leave

Since both *prepare the meal* and *make the meal* mean "get the meal ready," answer *a* is correct.

- **Words with Opposite Meanings**

Words with *opposite* or *almost opposite* meanings are called **antonyms**. For example, *help* and *hurt* are antonyms, as are *work* and *rest*. Antonyms can help you figure out the meanings of new words. How? By giving the opposite meaning of an unknown word, an antonym makes it easier to figure out what a new word means. Look at the following sentence from Chapter 1 and note how the antonym (in *italics*) helps explain the meaning of the word **cancel**. Then look at the three answer choices below and select the best answer.

> I *had planned to* see the doctor today, but I feel so much better that I think I will **cancel** my visit there.

> ___ *Cancel* means   a. remember   b. not do as planned   c. get ready for

The sentence says that the writer *had planned to* see the doctor but now will *cancel* the visit. You can guess, then, that *cancel* has the opposite meaning of *plan to*. So *b* is the correct answer.

- **The Meaning of the Sentence as a Whole**

  Sometimes there is no example, synonym, or antonym in a sentence. But even without these clues, you can figure out what a boldfaced word means by studying *the meaning of the sentence as a whole.* For example, look at the following sentence (from Chapter 1) and see if you can decide on the meaning of the word **flexible** simply by studying the rest of the sentence:

  > The new lamp next to my bed has a long neck that is so **flexible** it can be moved any way I want.
  >
  > ___ *Flexible* means a. able to bend b. real c. heavy

  It's clear that the neck of the new lamp must be able to bend in different ways. So *a* is the correct answer.

As you go through the "Eight Words in Context" sections, look closely at the two sentences given for each word and at the answer choices. As you figure out the meaning of each word, you are doing what's needed to understand and remember the word. Working with the word in this way and seeing how it is used in a sentence are the keys to completing the rest of the chapter.

2. Matching Words with Definitions

The second part of the chapter (see page 9) is called "Matching Words with Definitions." Often it is not enough to see how a word is used in a sentence. To understand a word fully, most people need to see the meaning, or *definition*, of the word. The matching activity gives the definition of each new word, but it also makes you look for and think about each definition. This is the best way to learn and remember a word. Now look at the *Caution* note that follows the matching activity. This note reminds you that you should not move on to the rest of the chapter until you are sure that you know the correct meaning of each word.

3. Sentence Check 1

The third part of the chapter (see page 10) is called "Sentence Check 1." This section, with eight sentences, gives you a chance to show how well you understand the new words. After placing *one* word in each sentence, *be sure to check your answers* in the Answer Key at the back of the book. Checking your answers will help you see if you really know the words. If you do, you are ready to complete the rest of the activities.

4. Sentence Check 2

The fourth part (see page 10) is called "Sentence Check 2." This activity is a bit more difficult because you have to see which *two* words fit best in a sentence. The extra work you do to find the right answers will help you learn the words.

5. Final Check

The fifth part (see page 11), called "Final Check," has two interesting readings. By choosing the right

word to fill in each blank, you get a good idea of the way the new words can be used in a paragraph.

At the end of the sixth part, you will find a box where you can enter your scores for "Sentence Check 1" through "Final Check." To get your score for each part, count how many you got right. Then look at the "Number right" explanation below the box to see what your score is for that part. You should also enter your scores on the Vocabulary Performance Chart found on the inside back cover of the book.

Now you know how the chapters in *Vocabulary Basics* are organized. As you have seen, every chapter gives you the chance to work with the new words *six times*. Each time you complete an activity, you get closer to making the new words part of your everyday vocabulary. And to give you even more practice, almost every chapter repeats some words from earlier chapters. (These repeated words are marked with small circles — like this°.) In short, you will have plenty of chances to learn — and relearn — the words.

UNDERSTANDING THE UNIT REVIEWS

As you see, there is a unit review at the end of every six chapters. Each unit review offers six different kinds of activities — everything from crossword puzzles to sentence writing. All in all, you will have the chance to practice each word in the unit *three* more times. When you finish the unit reviews, you will have worked *at least nine times* with each word in the book. By then, you should know the words so well that you will be ready to use them whenever you want.

A FINAL THOUGHT

The facts are in. It *is* important to have a strong vocabulary. Having a good vocabulary makes you a better reader, writer, speaker, thinker, and learner. Having a good vocabulary can make things smoother for you at home, in school, and on the job. But learning new words will not happen easily or by itself. You must decide that you want to build your vocabulary and then work hard with the chapters in this book. If you do, you will not only add to your vocabulary — you will add to your life as well. Good luck.

Judith Nadell
Beth Johnson
Paul Langan





Pretest of the Whole Book

This test contains 100 items. In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

Important: Keep in mind that this test is for diagnostic purposes only. **If you do not know a word, leave the space blank rather than guess at it.**

_____ 1. An **agreement** is: **a)** a fight **b)** a question **c)** an understanding

_____ 2. A **curious** person is: **a)** not interested **b)** angry **c)** full of questions

_____ 3. To **prepare** means: **a)** to get ready **b)** to watch **c)** to leave

_____ 4. If you **suggest** something, you: **a)** are afraid of it **b)** forget it **c)** offer an idea

_____ 5. To **entertain** means: **a)** to change **b)** to make sleepy **c)** to make happy

_____ 6. Something **negative** is: **a)** nice **b)** bad **c)** interesting

_____ 7. **Tension** is: **a)** rest **b)** happiness **c)** a nervous feeling

_____ 8. The **conclusion** of something is: **a)** the last part **b)** the best part **c)** the first part

_____ 9. A **volunteer** is: **a)** a bad worker **b)** a paid worker **c)** a worker who is not paid

_____ 10. Someone who is **fortunate** is: **a)** sorry **b)** scared **c)** lucky

_____ 11. If you **produce** something, you: **a)** make it **b)** break it **c)** take it

_____ 12. An **event** is: **a)** a problem **b)** something that happens **c)** a special skill

_____ 13. If something is **precious**, it: **a)** has great value **b)** is not important **c)** is funny

_____ 14. **Claim** means: **a)** to say something is true **b)** to hide **c)** to forget to say

_____ 15. To **satisfy** is to: **a)** surprise **b)** make unhappy **c)** be enough for

_____ 16. Something **definite** is: **a)** certain **b)** not fair **c)** wrong

_____ 17. **Specific** means: **a)** boring **b)** exact **c)** future

_____ 18. If you are **motivated**, you are: **a)** interested and excited **b)** well-known **c)** good-looking

_____ 19. To **suspect** is to: **a)** hope **b)** put away **c)** think

_____ 20. An **occasion** is: **a)** a car **b)** a special time **c)** a boring time

_____ 21. **Ability** means: **a)** a feeling of thanks **b)** a special skill **c)** a wish

_____ 22. If you **devour** something, you: **a)** make it **b)** eat it quickly **c)** save it for later

_____ 23. Something that is **constant** is: **a)** never-ending **b)** quiet **c)** sad

_____ 24. **Gratitude** means: **a)** anger **b)** thanks **c)** worry

_____ 25. A **struggle** is: **a)** a boring time **b)** an easy time **c)** a difficult time

(Continues on next page)

_____ 26. A good **excuse** is a good: **a**) reason **b**) time **c**) question

_____ 27. A **sociable** person is: **a**) quiet **b**) friendly **c**) angry

_____ 28. If something is **modern**, it is: **a**) up-to-date **b**) broken down **c**) strong

_____ 29. If you **ignore** something, you: **a**) know it **b**) pay no attention to it **c**) need it

_____ 30. **Inspire** means: **a**) to stop someone from doing something **b**) to make someone afraid to do something **c**) to make someone want to do something

_____ 31. **Damage** means: **a**) hard work **b**) safety **c**) harm

_____ 32. Someone who is **capable**: **a**) has skill **b**) is not ready **c**) is not careful

_____ 33. If you **require** something, you: **a**) send it away **b**) do without it **c**) need it

_____ 34. An **opportunity** is: **a**) a problem **b**) a habit **c**) a chance

_____ 35. If you are **sensitive**, you are: **a**) not caring **b**) happy **c**) understanding

_____ 36. To **persist** means: **a**) to give up easily **b**) to keep doing something **c**) to forget

_____ 37. Something **insulting** is: **a**) kind **b**) easy to understand **c**) hurtful

_____ 38. If you are **comfortable**, you are: **a**) relaxed **b**) mean **c**) thirsty

_____ 39. **Allow** means: **a**) to hate **b**) to let **c**) to stop

_____ 40. If you **avoid** something, you: **a**) get closer to it **b**) keep away from it **c**) enjoy it

_____ 41. **Confident** people are: **a**) mean **b**) honest **c**) sure of themselves

_____ 42. To **donate** something is to: **a**) show it off **b**) find it **c**) give it away

_____ 43. If something **disgusts** you, it: **a**) makes you happy **b**) makes you sick **c**) keeps you busy

_____ 44. **Advice** is: **a**) a helpful idea **b**) a friendship **c**) a mistake

_____ 45. If something is **impossible**, it: **a**) happens all the time **b**) cannot happen **c**) is safe

_____ 46. **Necessary** means: **a**) not wanted **b**) careful **c**) very important

_____ 47. **Defeat** means: **a**) to beat in a contest **b**) to keep **c**) to hide

_____ 48. If you **regret** something, you: **a**) feel bad about it **b**) are thankful for it **c**) are nervous about it

_____ 49. An **opinion** is: **a**) a thought **b**) a need **c**) a job

_____ 50. **Encourage** means: **a**) to stop **b**) to shout at angrily **c**) to give hope to

(Continues on next page)

____ 51. If you **prevent** something, you: a) stop it ahead of time b) help it c) give it away

____ 52. Something that is **available** is: a) boring b) easy to get c) expensive

____ 53. A **portion** is: a) all of something b) nothing c) a part of something

____ 54. When you **arrange** things, you: a) buy them b) mix them up c) put them in order

____ 55. If you **depend** on people, you: a) wait for them b) rely on them c) turn away from them

____ 56. A **cautious** person is: a) happy b) tired c) careful

____ 57. **Contain** means: a) to dislike b) to make c) to have inside

____ 58. If you are **uncertain**, you are: a) not interested b) sure c) not sure

____ 59. **Effort** means: a) hard work b) sadness c) good looks

____ 60. Something that is **effective** is: a) late b) slow c) good

____ 61. To **collapse** means: a) to build b) to stay safe c) to fall down

____ 62. When you are **relieved**, you are: a) unhappy b) not caring c) less worried

____ 63. Things that are **similar** are: a) not safe b) good-looking c) like each other

____ 64. **Confusion** is: a) a feeling of danger b) a feeling of not knowing what to do c) a feeling of peace

____ 65. Something that is **distant** is: a) nearby b) far away c) different

____ 66. To **refuse** means: a) to decide not to b) to forget about c) to want to

____ 67. **Humor** is: a) a lesson b) anger c) something funny

____ 68. Someone who is **stubborn**: a) is easy to get along with b) does not want to do something c) is quick to learn

____ 69. To **increase** means: a) to make smaller b) to make greater c) to get rid of

____ 70. **Progress** is: a) mistakes b) friends c) movement toward a goal

____ 71. A **generous** person is: a) willing to share b) selfish c) bad-tempered

____ 72. If you **select** something, you: a) break it b) lose it c) choose it

____ 73. Something that is **scarce** is: a) easily found b) famous c) few in number

____ 74. **Imagine** means: a) to picture in the mind b) to forget c) to say something nice

____ 75. Something **familiar** is: a) far away b) well-known c) sad

(Continues on next page)

_____ 76. A **detail** is: **a**) the end of something **b**) a small part **c**) a color

_____ 77. **Persuade** means: **a**) to get someone to do something **b**) to stop **c**) to leave

_____ 78. To **occupy** something means: **a**) to break it **b**) to clean it **c**) to live in it

_____ 79. To **realize** is to: **a**) hope **b**) know **c**) write

_____ 80. If you **separate** things, you: **a**) bring them together **b**) make them larger **c**) put them in different places

_____ 81. Something that is **common**: **a**) is very large **b**) is strange **c**) happens often

_____ 82. **Condition** means: **a**) the shape something is in **b**) a neighborhood **c**) news

_____ 83. To **develop** means: **a**) to grow a little at a time **b**) to leave **c**) to dry

_____ 84. Your **duty** is your: **a**) job **b**) hobby **c**) problem

_____ 85. To **pretend** is to: **a**) make believe **b**) grow **c**) know

_____ 86. Something that is **permanent** is: **a**) good **b**) new **c**) long-lasting

_____ 87. An **injury** is: **a**) a movement **b**) something that hurts **c**) good health

_____ 88. If you **expect** something, you: **a**) dislike it **b**) want it **c**) believe it will happen

_____ 89. Someone who is **competent** is: **a**) dangerous **b**) good at something **c**) boring

_____ 90. A **request** is a: **a**) problem **b**) answer **c**) thing that is asked for

_____ 91. If you **succeed**, you: **a**) do badly **b**) do well **c**) pay too much

_____ 92. To **examine** means: **a**) to leave **b**) to use **c**) to look at carefully

_____ 93. To **recognize** is to: **a**) know from before **b**) study **c**) lose

_____ 94. The **value** of something is: **a**) the reason for it **b**) its color **c**) what it is worth

_____ 95. If something **seldom** happens, it: **a**) happens every day **b**) does not happen often **c**) happens on purpose

_____ 96. If you **consider** something, you: **a**) cover it up **b**) think about it **c**) want it

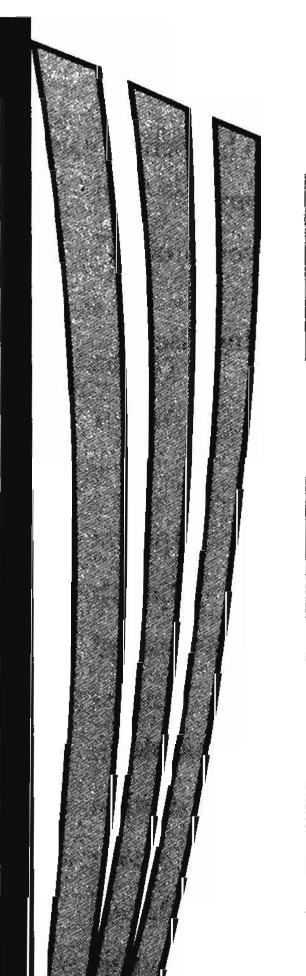
_____ 97. To **admire** means: **a**) to laugh at **b**) to think highly of **c**) to forget

_____ 98. If you **attempt** something, you: **a**) repeat it **b**) try it **c**) remember it

_____ 99. A **solution** is: **a**) a reason for doing something **b**) a question **c**) an answer to a problem

_____ 100. If you **achieve** something, you: **a**) lose it **b**) have trouble with it **c**) reach a goal

Unit One



Chapter 1

agreement	flexible
cancel	odor
curious	prepare
fact	suggest

Chapter 2

daily	negative
entertain	original
experience	produce
identify	tension

Chapter 3

attack	minor
conclusion	protect
event	talent
humble	volunteer

Chapter 4

accuse	pleasant
claim	precious
embarrassed	public
inspire	unusual

Chapter 5

benefit	rival
delay	satisfy
emphasize	tempt
logical	vacant

Chapter 6

definite	oppose
fortunate	refer
leisure	specific
motivated	suspect

UNIT ONE: Pretest

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **agreement** **a)** a fight **b)** a question **c)** an understanding

____ 2. **cancel** **a)** to remember **b)** to not do as planned **c)** to get ready for

____ 3. **curious** **a)** not interested **b)** angry **c)** full of questions

____ 4. **fact** **a)** a rule **b)** something true **c)** a long story

____ 5. **flexible** **a)** able to bend **b)** real **c)** heavy

____ 6. **odor** **a)** a smell **b)** a cost **c)** a warm feeling

____ 7. **prepare** **a)** to get ready **b)** to watch **c)** to leave

____ 8. **suggest** **a)** to fear **b)** to forget **c)** to offer an idea

____ 9. **daily** **a)** happening each day **b)** happening each week **c)** happening each year

____ 10. **entertain** **a)** to change **b)** to make sleepy **c)** to make happy

____ 11. **experience** **a)** a difficult question **b)** something that a person lives through **c)** a good reason

____ 12. **identify** **a)** to dislike **b)** to make something out of something else **c)** to find out who someone is or what something is

____ 13. **negative** **a)** nice **b)** bad **c)** interesting

____ 14. **original** **a)** quiet **b)** weak **c)** new

____ 15. **produce** **a)** to make **b)** to break **c)** to take

____ 16. **tension** **a)** rest **b)** happiness **c)** a nervous feeling

____ 17. **attack** **a)** to run away **b)** to hurt **c)** to keep safe

____ 18. **conclusion** **a)** the last part **b)** the best part **c)** the first part

____ 19. **event** **a)** something that happens **b)** a problem **c)** a special skill

____ 20. **humble** **a)** loud **b)** afraid **c)** not bragging

____ 21. **minor** **a)** dangerous **b)** small **c)** important

____ 22. **protect** **a)** to hurt **b)** to look at **c)** to keep safe

____ 23. **talent** **a)** a dislike **b)** a skill **c)** a fear

____ 24. **volunteer** **a)** a bad worker **b)** a paid worker **c)** a worker who is not paid

(Continues on next page)

_____ 25. **accuse** a) to ask b) to blame c) to thank

_____ 26. **claim** a) to say that something is true b) to hide c) to forget to say

_____ 27. **embarrassed** a) proud b) easy to like c) ashamed

_____ 28. **inspire** a) to stop someone from doing something b) to make someone afraid to do something c) to make someone want to do something

_____ 29. **pleasant** a) sleepy b) mean c) nice

_____ 30. **precious** a) having great value b) not important c) funny

_____ 31. **public** a) secret b) not crowded c) open to everyone

_____ 32. **unusual** a) surprising b) helpful c) boring

_____ 33. **benefit** a) to help b) to harm c) to tell

_____ 34. **delay** a) to enjoy b) to hurry c) to wait until later

_____ 35. **emphasize** a) to show to be important b) to cover up c) to turn around

_____ 36. **logical** a) empty b) making sense c) lucky

_____ 37. **rival** a) someone that another person is working with
b) someone who is going to school
c) someone that another person tries to beat in a contest of some kind

_____ 38. **satisfy** a) to surprise b) to make unhappy c) to be enough for

_____ 39. **tempt** a) to invite someone to do something bad
b) to warn someone against doing something bad
c) to stop someone from doing something bad

_____ 40. **vacant** a) helpful b) crowded c) not in use

_____ 41. **definite** a) certain b) not fair c) wrong

_____ 42. **fortunate** a) sorry b) scared c) lucky

_____ 43. **leisure** a) hard work b) free time c) a deep sleep

_____ 44. **motivated** a) interested and excited b) well-known c) good-looking

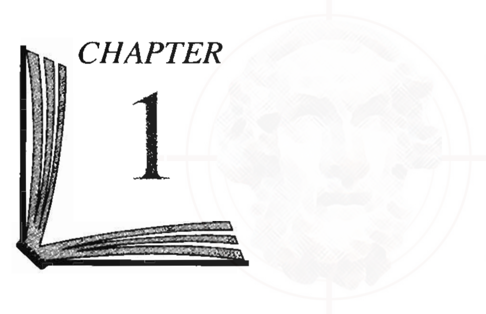
_____ 45. **oppose** a) to be happy about b) to be against c) to speak about

_____ 46. **refer** a) to put a stop to b) to be unable to remember c) to talk about

_____ 47. **specific** a) exact b) boring c) future

_____ 48. **suspect** a) to hope b) to put away c) to think

SCORE: (Number correct ________ × 2) + 4 = __________ %





agreement	**flexible**
cancel	**odor**
curious	**prepare**
fact	**suggest**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 agreement
/ə'gri:mənt/
– noun

- After fighting for hours, the little girls made an **agreement** to share their toys.
- Len is angry because Anita broke their **agreement** to take turns doing the dishes.

___*Agreement* means a. fight b. question c. promise

2 cancel
/'kænsəl/
– verb

- I had planned to see the doctor today, but I feel so much better that I think I will **cancel** my visit there.
- The teacher **canceled** the test because so many students were absent.

___*Cancel* means a. remember b. not do as planned c. get ready for

3 curious
/'kjuərɪəs/
– adjective

- My son is so **curious** about what I got him for his birthday that he asks me questions about it all day long.
- Scientists are **curious** people — they want to know how nature works.

___*Curious* means a. not interested b. angry c. full of questions

4 fact
/fækt/
– noun

- It is a strange **fact** that the male sea horse, not the female, gives birth.
- After the robbery, the police asked us many questions. They wanted to get as many **facts** as they could about what had happened.

___*Fact* means a. rule b. something true c. long story

5 flexible
/'fleksəbl/
– adjective

- The new lamp next to my bed has a long neck that is so **flexible** it can be moved any way I want.
- Karen is so **flexible** that she can sit down and lift her ankle over her head.

___*Flexible* means a. able to bend b. real c. heavy

6 odor
/ˈəʊdə(r)/
– noun

- If you think there is an **odor** of gas in your home, you should call the gas company right away.
- As I painted the room, the **odor** of the paint began to give me a headache.

___*Odor* means a. smell b. cost c. warm feeling

7 prepare
/prɪˈpeə(r)/
– verb

- To **prepare** for the difficult test, Jeff decided to stay up all night and study.
- Last year, I **prepared** all kinds of interesting dishes for our holiday dinner. But this year, I'm going to relax and let someone else make the meal.

___*Prepare* means a. get ready b. watch c. leave

8 suggest
/səˈdʒest/
– verb

- When my son gets bored, I often **suggest** that he call his friends or go outside.
- My cousin **suggested** that we have Thanksgiving dinner at her house. She loves to cook for company.

___*Suggest* means a. fear b. forget c. offer an idea

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ______________ To stop something that was planned; to call something off
2. ______________ Able to bend
3. ______________ To give someone an idea about something; to offer a thought for others to think about
4. ______________ Something true; something that can be proved
5. ______________ To get ready
6. ______________ A smell
7. ______________ Wanting to know more about something; having questions about someone or something
8. ______________ A promise people make to one another; an understanding between people

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **agreement**	c. **curious**	e. **flexible**	g. **prepare**
b. **cancel**	d. **fact**	f. **odor**	h. **suggests**

________ 1. Diane came to an ___ with her parents that she would get home before midnight on weekends.

________ 2. During heavy snowstorms, airlines often ___ flights because it is too dangerous to fly.

________ 3. I was ___ about the two new students. They arrived in class carrying briefcases and laptop computers.

________ 4. I ___ for a visit from my two-year-old niece by hiding all the glass objects so she can't break them.

________ 5. A fishing rod must be ___ so that it does not break when a fish pulls on the line.

________ 6. The ___ of dirty socks and old sneakers filled the boys' bedroom.

________ 7. It is a ___ that the world is round.

________ 8. Before I hand in a paper, I read it out loud to my sister, and she ___ ways to make it better.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **agreement**	c. **curious**	e. **flexible**	g. **prepares**
b. **canceled**	d. **facts**	f. **odor**	h. **suggest**

____
________ 1–2. My muscles get stiff when I run, so I asked the coach to ___ some exercises to make me more ___.

____
________ 3–4. Before you make an ___ to buy a used car, learn all the ___ — such as how many miles it has gone and what needs to be fixed.

____
________ 5–6. Julia is ___ about her new neighbors. When they invited her to lunch, she ___ another lunch date so that she could pay them a visit.

____
________ 7–8. When Jack cleans the smelly old barn, he ___ by putting a handkerchief over his nose to keep out the ___.

Final Check

A. The Nose Knows

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **curious**	b. **fact**	c. **odors**	d. **suggest**

Have you ever been (1)________________________ about what life would be like if you couldn't smell anything? Maybe you think, "That wouldn't be so bad." After all, you wouldn't miss some (2)________________________, like the smell coming from the guy sitting next to you who hasn't taken a bath in several weeks. But think about it again. All day, every day, our noses pass along information to us. We walk by the kitchen, pick up the smell of apple pie in the oven, and know that we will enjoy a tasty slice later on. Or we go outside on a warm spring day and pick up the clean smell of freshly cut grass. Other smells that aren't so nice, like those of spilled gasoline or burning wood, may protect us by warning of danger.

It is a (3)________________________ that smells make us remember the past. For instance, the smell of the outdoors after a rainstorm may remind us of an early-morning hike in the woods we took years ago. Scientists are not sure why smells remind us of the past, but they know it is so. Indeed, scientists (4)________________________ that smell may be the most powerful of all our senses.

B. Barbie: A Bad Example?

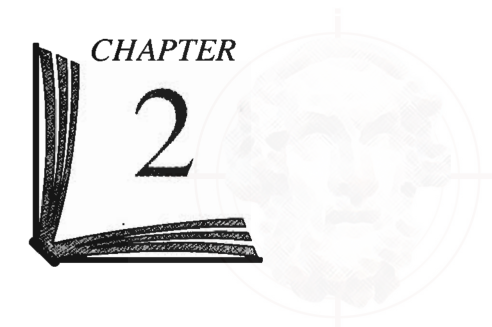
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **agreement**	b. **cancel**	c. **flexible**	d. **prepare**

"I want a Barbie. I want a Barbie." Most parents have heard that cry. Lots of little girls love Barbie. Barbie has been around for many years, and she will probably be around for many more. But some parents worry about Barbie. They worry that as their daughters (5)________________________ to grow up, they will look at Barbie and think, "She's so pretty. I want to be like her." The problem is that no healthy, normal woman looks like Barbie. If Barbie were full-sized, she would be more than six feet tall and weigh about one hundred pounds. Little girls may get the idea that in order to be pretty, they must have a very thin body. Parents need to tell their daughters that it is more important to have a strong, (6)______________________ body — one that can run and jump, twist and turn. Of course, it's hard to tell a little girl that she can't have a Barbie if all her friends do. So some parents get together and, among themselves, make an (7)______________________ not to buy Barbie dolls. The parents (8)__________________ their plans to buy Barbie and buy dolls that have more healthy-looking bodies.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ________%	Final Check ________%
	Sentence Check 2 ________%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





daily	**negative**
entertain	**original**
experience	**produce**
identify	**tension**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 **daily**
/ˈdeɪlɪ/
– adjective

- Noah goes to the gym seven days a week. He says **daily** exercise keeps him healthy and happy.
- Washing the dishes is one of my sister's **daily** jobs.

___*Daily* means

a. happening each year b. happening each week c. happening each day

2 **entertain**
/ˌentəˈteɪn/
– verb

- Cristine thought the novel would **entertain** her, but instead it put her to sleep.
- While we were stuck at home during the snowstorm, my brother **entertained** us with ghost stories.

___*Entertain* means

a. change b. make sleepy c. interest greatly

3 **experience**
/ɪkˈspɪərɪəns/
– noun

- Having my car break down on a busy highway was one **experience** I don't want to have again.
- I'm happy to say that working at the day care center turned out to be a wonderful **experience**.

___*Experience* means

a. difficult question b. something that a person lives through c. good reason

4 **identify**
/aɪˈdentɪfaɪ/
– verb

- Palm readers say they can **identify** many things about a person by looking at the lines of the hand.
- The police used the fingerprints they found to **identify** who the bank robbers were.

___*Identify* means

a. dislike b. make c. find out

5 **negative**
/ˈnegətɪv/
– adjective

- People who feel **negative** about themselves often have trouble making friends.
- I turned off the TV because I didn't want to hear another **negative** story about crime and violence.

___*Negative* means

a. nice b. bad c. interesting

6 original
/ə'rɪdʒənəl/
– adjective

- My ideas for the baby shower were boring and unexciting, but Carla's were interesting and **original**.
- All the students in the class thought that the ending of my short story was **original** and very different from anything they had ever read.

___*Original* means a. quiet b. weak c. fresh

7 produce
/prəʊ'djuːs/
– verb

- The new factory in town can **produce** millions of bottles a year.
- My little nephew **produces** the loudest snores I have ever heard.

___*Produce* means a. make b. break c. take

8 tension
/'tenʃən/
– noun

- Whenever she gets upset or feels **tension**, Jane takes a hot bath.
- When I feel **tension**, I relax by going for a long, quiet walk.

___*Tension* means a. rest b. happiness c. worry

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ______________________ Bad; without anything good; not positive
2. ______________________ Anything someone has seen or lived through; what happens to someone
3. ______________________ To find out exactly who someone is or what something is
4. ______________________ Done every day; happening or appearing every day
5. ______________________ To make; to bring about
6. ______________________ New; not like everything else
7. ______________________ A nervous feeling; unrest caused by worry
8. ______________________ To keep people's interest with something happy or enjoyable

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **daily**	c. **experience**	e. **negative**	g. **produced**
b. **entertained**	d. **identify**	f. **original**	h. **tension**

________________ 1. Many students feel ___ before they take a test.

________________ 2. After months of cutting and sewing, the group ___ a beautiful quilt.

________________ 3. My neighbor, Mrs. Yoo, likes to read the ___ newspaper on her porch.

________________ 4. My husband's high-school graduation was an ___ we will never forget.

________________ 5. I was happy when my boss told me I had some helpful and ___ ideas for improving business.

________________ 6. My blind date said I could ___ him at the coffee shop by his red hair and beard.

________________ 7. Gina doesn't seem to like her relatives. She's always saying ___ things about them.

________________ 8. My three-year-old nephew ___ us by singing a little song about a spider in the rain.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **daily**	c. **experience**	e. **negative**	g. **produced**
b. **entertaining**	d. **identify**	f. **original**	h. **tension**

________________ 1–2. Chandra takes a ___ walk right after work because it helps her calm
________________ down after a long day filled with ___.

________________ 3–4. My ___ with dates has often been good, but my brother's has always
________________ been ___.

________________ 5–6. We could not ___ the rock star who was ___ the crowd, but we knew
________________ we had seen him somewhere else.

________________ 7–8. Years ago, the Coca-Cola Company came up with a completely ___
________________ recipe for a new drink. Today that drink is called "Coke," and millions of gallons of it are ___ each year.

Final Check

A. Feeling Blue

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **entertain**	b. **experience**	c. **produce**	d. **tension**

At some point or another, every one of us has gotten up in the morning feeling a lot of (1)__________________. Problems at work, difficulties at home, and too many bills to pay can make us feel down. Studies show that these bad moods can make a real difference in how we feel about ourselves and our lives. For example, bad moods often lead to or (2)__________________ sad, gloomy thoughts. We may get down on ourselves and think we're not worth much. Thinking that life will always be this way, we may decide that nothing in the world can possibly (3)__________________ us or make us feel better. These beliefs are false, but they seem true at the time. Also, when we are in a bad mood, even a good (4)__________________ — like an excellent meal or a wonderful evening with friends — usually isn't enough to raise our spirits. The only bright spot about bad moods is this fact° — they always pass. When they do, the bad thoughts and feelings pass too.

B. A Late Love Letter

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

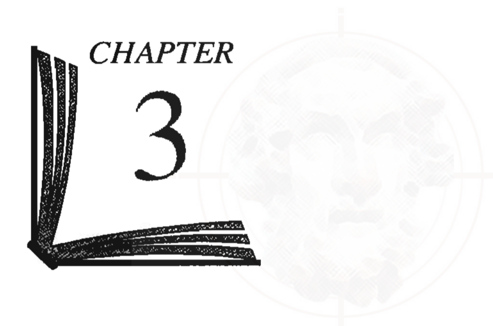
a. **daily**	b. **identified**	c. **negative**	d. **original**

Years ago, a man working in Hawaii wrote a love letter to his wife in Seattle. He put the letter in a bottle and threw the bottle into the Pacific Ocean. He hoped the bottle would end up on a beach near Seattle. However, the bottle washed up on a beach thousands of miles away, where it was picked up by Chris Willie. Willie, of course, was curious° about the letter. He took it out of the bottle and read what the man had written. Smiling, Willie thought to himself, "There are so many sad, (5)__________________ things in the world. It's wonderful that the writer has found such a surprising and (6)__________________ way to show his love." Then Willie put the letter and the bottle in a package, which he mailed to Seattle. Soon, though, the package was returned, with the message "No longer at this address."

Next, Willie mailed the package to a Seattle (7)__________________ newspaper. The paper printed the letter, but no one called to say she was the woman to whom the letter was addressed. Six years later, a newspaper reporter finally (8)__________________ the woman and read her the letter over the phone. The letter began, "If by the time this letter reaches you I am old and gray, I know that our love will be as great as it is today." When the reporter finished reading, he heard the woman laughing. "Well," she said, "I hate to tell you, but we got divorced." Then she hung up.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ______%	Final Check ______%
	Sentence Check 2 ______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





attack	**minor**
conclusion	**protect**
event	**talent**
humble	**volunteer**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 **attack**
/ə'tæk/
– verb

- Army ants **attack** and often destroy other insects in their path.
- The soldiers **attacked** the sleeping village without any warning.

___*Attack* means a. run away b. hurt c. keep safe

2 **conclusion**
/kən'klu:ʒən/
– noun

- In most action movies, the **conclusion** is always the same — the hero beats the bad guy and wins the heart of the beautiful girl.
- My first date started out well but came to a poor **conclusion**. My car broke down and had to be towed to a garage.

___*Conclusion* means a. last part b. best part c. first part

3 **event**
/ɪ'vent/
– noun

- Our family party is an **event** that I look forward to each year.
- The first day of school is a big **event** for most children.

___*Event* means a. important happening b. problem c. special skill

4 **humble**
/'hʌmbl/
– adjective

- Jack always brags about himself, but Kathy is **humble** even when she has reason to be proud.
- Even though his home run won the game, Ali was so **humble** that he just said, "I was lucky" when we thanked him.

___*Humble* means a. loud b. afraid c. not bragging

5 **minor**
/'maɪnə(r)/
– adjective

- Although Tanya's car was badly damaged in the crash, Tanya had only **minor** cuts and bruises.
- The teacher must have liked my paper because she made only a few **minor** changes.

___*Minor* means a. dangerous b. small c. important

6 protect
/prəʊˈtekt/
– verb

- Before putting the glass candlesticks in a bag, the salesperson wrapped them in newspaper to **protect** them.
- The mother turtle **protects** her eggs by burying them in the sand.

___*Protect* means a. hurt b. look at c. keep safe

7 talent
/ˈtælənt/
– noun

- Some lucky people are born with a **talent** for making friends easily.
- Lian was happy when her uncle told her she had a **talent** for singing.

___*Talent* means a. dislike b. skill c. fear

8 volunteer
/ˌvɒlənˈtɪə(r)/
– noun

- Mrs. Jackson has been a **volunteer** at the hospital for so many years that many people think she is a paid worker.
- My son's teacher sent a note home that said, "I need parent **volunteers** to help when we take trips away from school."

___*Volunteer* means a. bad worker b. paid worker c. worker who is not paid

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ________________ To keep safe
2. ________________ Someone who works or helps for no pay
3. ________________ A special skill, often one that someone is born with
4. ________________ Not important
5. ________________ Not thinking too highly of oneself
6. ________________ To hurt; to begin to harm
7. ________________ Something that happens, often an important happening
8. ________________ The ending of something

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **attack**	c. **event**	e. **minor**	g. **talent**
b. **conclusion**	d. **humble**	f. **protects**	h. **volunteers**

______________ 1. Although my VCR had only a ___ problem, it still cost me a lot of money to get it fixed.

______________ 2. The first day of school is an important ___ in a child's life.

______________ 3. At the ___ of the school play, the parents and teachers stood up and cheered the kids.

______________ 4. If you tease an animal, you may cause it to ___ you.

______________ 5. I can't draw a straight line, but my son has so much ___ in art that he can draw anything.

______________ 6. Since the city did not have money to pay for more police, the mayor asked for ___ to help keep the streets safe.

______________ 7. My neighbor is so ___ that he didn't want to accept an award for all the work he has done with the elderly.

______________ 8. Even a gentle animal can be dangerous when it ___ its young.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **attacks**	c. **event**	e. **minor**	g. **talent**
b. **conclusion**	d. **humble**	f. **protect**	h. **volunteers**

____
______________ 1–2. Many famous athletes have lots of ___ but few of these "heroes" seem like nice, ___ people.

____
______________ 3–4. Some people think owning a gun is a good way to ___ themselves in case a burglar ___, but I think having a gun is dangerous.

____
______________ 5–6. The main ___ at the picnic was a bicycle race. It went well except for a ___ problem — one of the bikes got a flat tire.

____
______________ 7–8. At the ___ of Jim's birthday party, everybody left so quickly that we could not find any ___ to help clean up the mess.

Final Check

A. Ads That Lie

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **conclusion**	b. **events**	c. **protect**	d. **talent**

Every day of our lives, ads send messages about drinking and smoking that just are not true. It's time we learned how to (1)______________________ ourselves and our kids from these dangerous lies. At the (2)______________________ of a long day at work or school, many of us come home and flip on the television. What do we see? We will probably see a TV ad showing healthy young people drinking beer and enjoying life. Maybe they are at the beach, on the ski slopes, or at a party. By the time we are old enough to vote, we will have seen this kind of TV commercial more than 75,000 times. These ads suggest° that drinking is part of a fun-filled life. Is that really true? Not at all. Studies show that drinking leads to car accidents, fighting, loss of memory, birth defects, and more.

Ads for smoking are no better. In magazines and on signs, beautiful young people puff on cigarettes as they enjoy fun-filled (3)____________________ like games of volleyball or tennis. But by now, we know that smoking is not part of a healthy life. In real life, top athletes — those who have real (4)____________________ — don't reach for a cigarette at game time. They know that smoking will harm their bodies and can lead to cancer, heart disease, and lung problems.

If you are an adult and you drink and smoke, that's your choice. But to young children who don't know the truth, these ads are dangerous. Cigarettes and beer won't give them strength, good looks, or lots of friends. They will just make them sick. And that's the truth.

B. Horrible Hiccups!

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

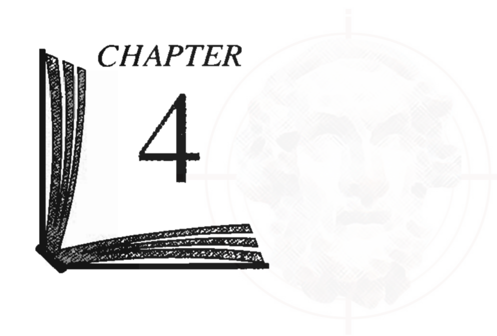
a. **attacked**	b. **humble**	c. **minor**	d. **volunteer**

Everyone gets the hiccups. To most people, they are just a (5)____________________ problem. But for some people, hiccups can cause real trouble. Between 1948 and 1956, one man hiccupped 160 million times! He tried everything to stop them — drinking a cold glass of water, getting scared by one of his friends, holding his breath. They still came back. Then one day, the hiccups simply stopped. Heinz Isecke, a plumber from England, had an even worse experience.° Starting in 1973, Isecke was (6)____________________ by a fit of hiccups that lasted eight years. Isecke hiccuped so many times that he was unable to sleep. He even had an operation to get rid of the hiccups, but it didn't work. Isecke was a quiet, (7)____________________ man who hated to trouble others. But he was so bothered by his hiccups that he asked for help from all over the world. After a few weeks, an unknown (8)____________________ sent Isecke, free of charge, a "secret" herbal drink. The day after he tried it, Isecke's hiccups were gone. What was in the drink? No one is sure. So the next time you have the hiccups, just be glad you are not Isecke.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ________%	Final Check ________%
	Sentence Check 2 ________%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





accuse	**pleasant**
claim	**precious**
embarrassed	**public**
inspire	**unusual**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 accuse /əˈkjuːz/ – verb

- My roommates often **accuse** me of eating food they had bought for themselves.
- My mother asked my little brother if he had spread jam all over the wall. He said "no" and **accused** his teddy bear of being the guilty one.

___*Accuse* means a. ask b. blame c. thank

2 claim /kleɪm/ – verb

- The ads **claim** that the new diet pills melt away fat while you sleep.
- Car dealers often **claim** that their prices are the lowest in town.

___*Claim* means a. say that it is true b. hide c. forget to say

3 embarrassed /ɪmˈbærəst/ – adjective

- Teenage boys often feel **embarrassed** when their voices sound deep one minute and squeaky the next.
- Suki felt **embarrassed** when she dropped a tray loaded with food on the floor of the cafeteria.

___*Embarrassed* means a. proud b. easy to like c. silly and ashamed

4 inspire /ɪnˈspaɪə(r)/ – verb

- Cool fall days **inspire** me to take long walks in the woods.
- The movie *Rocky* **inspired** Stan to become a boxer.

___*Inspire* means a. stop someone from doing something b. make someone afraid to do something c. make someone want to do something

5 pleasant /ˈplezənt/ – adjective

- Let's invite the new neighbors to our party. They seem **pleasant**.
- Rosa smiled at the **pleasant** sound of her children laughing and playing outside.

___*Pleasant* means a. sleepy b. mean c. nice

6 precious
/ˈpreʃəs/
– adjective

- Lawrence is so careful with his children that it is plain they are **precious** to him.
- The painting is so **precious** that the museum will never sell it.

___*Precious* means a. great in value b. not important c. funny

7 public
/ˈpʌblɪk/
– adjective

- Thousands of people enjoyed the city's **public** pools last summer.
- Anyone who lives in the city can use the **public** library without paying.

___*Public* means a. secret b. not crowded c. open to all

8 unusual
/ʌnˈjuːʒʊəl/
– adjective

- Most lions have a golden-brown color, but the **unusual** lion we saw at the zoo was white.
- It is **unusual** to have snow in June, but sometimes it happens.

___*Unusual* means a. surprising b. helpful c. boring

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ________________ Easy to like; enjoyable; lovely
2. ________________ Open to everyone; not private
3. ________________ Not often happening or seen; strange; not usual
4. ________________ To say someone has done something wrong; to charge someone with a fault or crime
5. ________________ Worth a lot; having great value
6. ________________ To get someone to want to do something; to move someone to take action
7. ________________ Feeling silly and ashamed
8. ________________ To say that something is true, often without being able to show that it is so

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **accused**	c. **embarrassed**	e. **pleasant**	g. **public**
b. **claims**	d. **inspires**	f. **precious**	h. **unusual**

________________ 1. The teacher ___ Sandra of cheating on the test.

________________ 2. The queen of England owns many famous and ___ jewels.

________________ 3. Many people get red-faced and ___ when given a compliment.

________________ 4. One reason people love spring and fall is that the weather then is often so ___.

________________ 5. Ms. Lennox is a great teacher. She ___ students to do their best.

________________ 6. I go to a private school, but all my friends go to ___ school.

________________ 7. It is ___ for my kids not to be hungry. If they don't want to eat, they must be sick.

________________ 8. Jerry ___ that he told his friends he would be late, but no one remembers hearing him say that.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

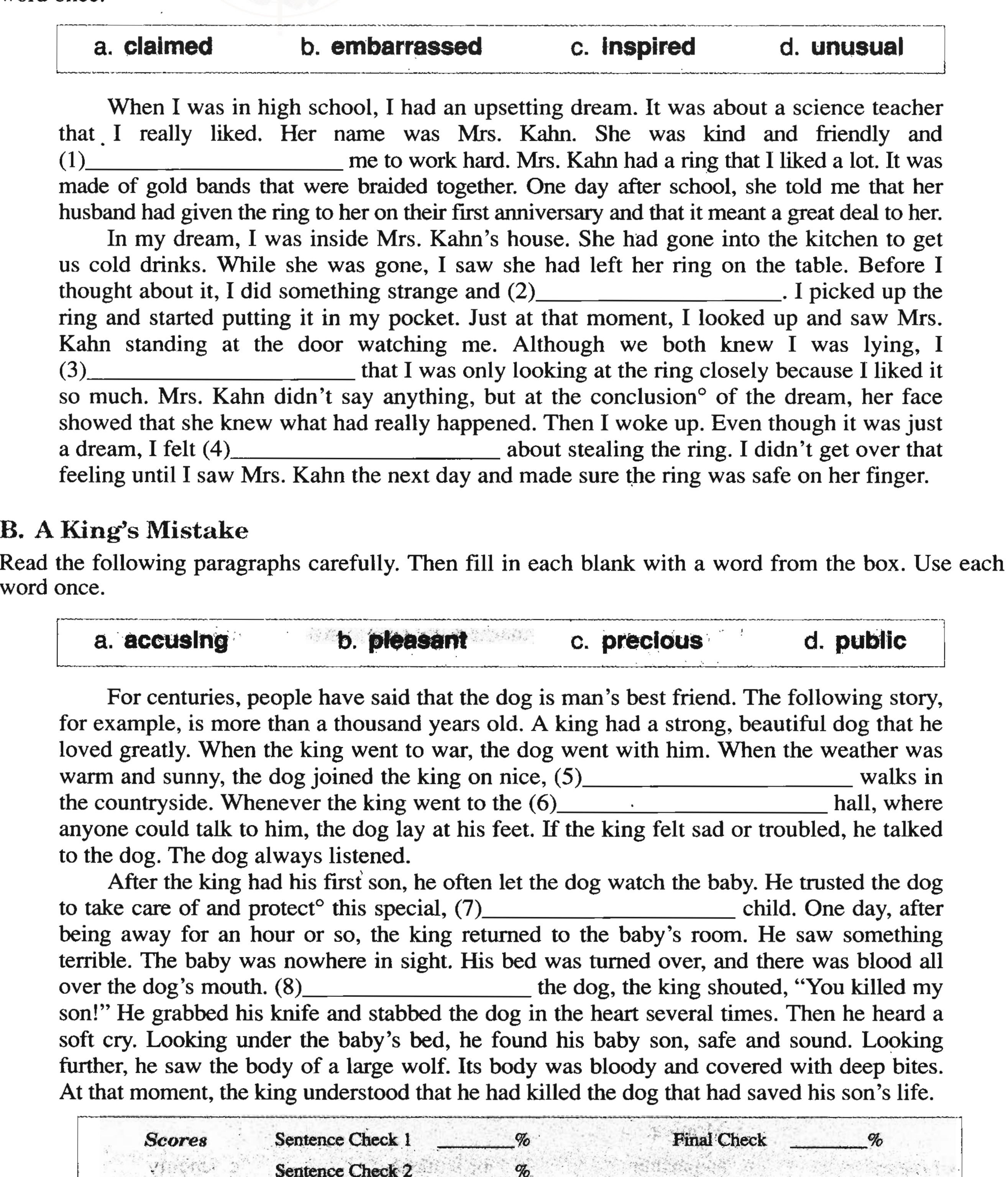
a. **accused**	c. **embarrassed**	e. **pleasant**	g. **public**
b. **claim**	d. **inspired**	f. **precious**	h. **unusual**

________________ 1–2. A man at the hotel ___ the person who cleaned his room of stealing a ___ ring.
____

________________ 3–4. At home, Troy's wife calls him "Sweetie Pie," but he would be ___ if she used that name in a ___ place, where many other people are around.
____

________________ 5–6. It's hard work to be a Santa Claus in a department store. You have to act ___ for hours while children ___ that they have been good all year long.
____

________________ 7–8. An old girlfriend who liked birds ___ Robert to take up the ___ hobby of finding and saving bird feathers.
____



Final Check

A. An Upsetting Dream

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **claimed**	b. **embarrassed**	c. **inspired**	d. **unusual**

When I was in high school, I had an upsetting dream. It was about a science teacher that I really liked. Her name was Mrs. Kahn. She was kind and friendly and (1)________________ me to work hard. Mrs. Kahn had a ring that I liked a lot. It was made of gold bands that were braided together. One day after school, she told me that her husband had given the ring to her on their first anniversary and that it meant a great deal to her.

In my dream, I was inside Mrs. Kahn's house. She had gone into the kitchen to get us cold drinks. While she was gone, I saw she had left her ring on the table. Before I thought about it, I did something strange and (2)________________. I picked up the ring and started putting it in my pocket. Just at that moment, I looked up and saw Mrs. Kahn standing at the door watching me. Although we both knew I was lying, I (3)________________ that I was only looking at the ring closely because I liked it so much. Mrs. Kahn didn't say anything, but at the conclusion° of the dream, her face showed that she knew what had really happened. Then I woke up. Even though it was just a dream, I felt (4)________________ about stealing the ring. I didn't get over that feeling until I saw Mrs. Kahn the next day and made sure the ring was safe on her finger.

B. A King's Mistake

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **accusing**	b. **pleasant**	c. **precious**	d. **public**

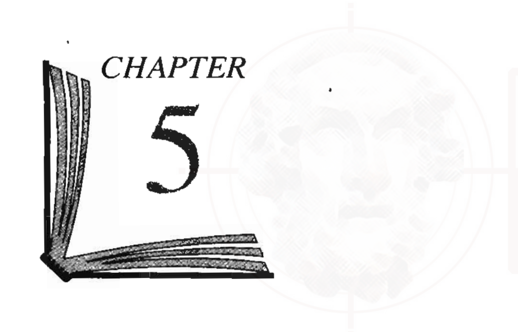
For centuries, people have said that the dog is man's best friend. The following story, for example, is more than a thousand years old. A king had a strong, beautiful dog that he loved greatly. When the king went to war, the dog went with him. When the weather was warm and sunny, the dog joined the king on nice, (5)________________ walks in the countryside. Whenever the king went to the (6)________________ hall, where anyone could talk to him, the dog lay at his feet. If the king felt sad or troubled, he talked to the dog. The dog always listened.

After the king had his first son, he often let the dog watch the baby. He trusted the dog to take care of and protect° this special, (7)________________ child. One day, after being away for an hour or so, the king returned to the baby's room. He saw something terrible. The baby was nowhere in sight. His bed was turned over, and there was blood all over the dog's mouth. (8)________________ the dog, the king shouted, "You killed my son!" He grabbed his knife and stabbed the dog in the heart several times. Then he heard a soft cry. Looking under the baby's bed, he found his baby son, safe and sound. Looking further, he saw the body of a large wolf. Its body was bloody and covered with deep bites. At that moment, the king understood that he had killed the dog that had saved his son's life.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ________%	Final Check ________%
	Sentence Check 2 ________%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





benefit	**rival**
delay	**satisfy**
emphasize	**tempt**
logical	**vacant**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 benefit
/ˈbenɪfɪt/
– verb

- People who lost their homes in the flood will **benefit** greatly from the food and clothes that others give them.
- John's grades have **benefited** from the studying he now does after school.

___*Benefit* means a. be helped b. be harmed c. be told

2 delay
/dɪˈleɪ/
– verb

- When Mom and Dad work late, we **delay** dinner until they get home.
- Tony **delayed** doing his homework for an hour because he wanted to watch his favorite TV show.

___*Delay* means a. enjoy b. hurry c. wait until later

3 emphasize
/ˈemfəsaɪz/
– verb

- Sarah uses yellow markers to **emphasize** the important points in her textbooks.
- The speaker **emphasized** his main points by pounding on the table as he spoke.

___*Emphasize* means a. show to be important b. cover up c. turn around

4 logical
/ˈlɒdʒɪkəl/
– adjective

- Juan really likes his science class because his teacher can make the most difficult ideas seem clear and **logical**.
- Your apartment is so small that it does not seem **logical** to invite forty people to the party.

___*Logical* means a. empty b. making sense c. lucky

5 rival
/ˈraɪvəl/
– noun

- I am Yolanda's good friend, but when we face each other on the tennis court, she is my biggest **rival**.
- Kevin and Ted were **rivals** — they each wanted to go on a date with Monica.

___*Rival* means a. partner b. student c. enemy

6 satisfy
/ˈsætɪsfaɪ/
– verb

- I'm not very hungry. Just a sandwich will **satisfy** me.
- My little girl likes me to read to her. A few pages **satisfy** her and then she goes off to play.

___ *Satisfy* means a. surprise b. make unhappy c. be enough for

7 tempt
/tempt/
– verb

- Pies, cakes, candy bars, and ice cream **tempt** many people to go off their diets.
- I don't go to my favorite clothing store often because it **tempts** me to spend too much money.

___ *Tempt* means a. invite someone to do something bad b. warn someone against doing something bad c. stop someone from doing something bad

8 vacant
/ˈveɪkənt/
– adjective

- The Committee for a Beautiful City is going to plant a garden in that ugly **vacant** lot.
- Too tired to drive any further, we stopped at a motel and asked if there was a **vacant** room.

___ *Vacant* means a. helpful b. crowded c. not in use

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________ Someone that another person tries to beat in a contest of some kind
2. ____________ Empty; not being used by anyone
3. ____________ To wait until later to do something; to postpone
4. ____________ To show that something is important
5. ____________ To be helped by something
6. ____________ To make someone want to do something that isn't good or right
7. ____________ Making sense; using or showing reason
8. ____________ To be enough for someone; to fill someone's need or wish

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **benefited**	c. **emphasize**	e. **rivals**	g. **tempted**
b. **delayed**	d. **logical**	f. **satisfy**	h. **vacant**

______________ 1. Many drivers get lost in our town because the streets often curve sharply, rather than going in ___ directions.

______________ 2. The dry lawn ___ from the heavy rain.

______________ 3. Children often think of their brothers and sisters as ___ for their parents' love.

______________ 4. Tara was so afraid of the dentist that she ___ going to visit him until her tooth really hurt.

______________ 5. The weather reporter raised her voice to ___ that no one should drive during the dangerous ice storm.

______________ 6. Since Doris went off to college, her bedroom at home has been ___.

______________ 7. My brother ___ me to skip school today. He said, "Instead of going to school, come to the park with me."

______________ 8. I can't go to the beach today, but an hour in the swimming pool should ___ me.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **benefit**	c. **emphasize**	e. **rival**	g. **tempts**
b. **delay**	d. **logical**	f. **satisfy**	h. **vacant**

____
______________ 1–2. I'm so tired that I would ___ from a long vacation. It would ___ my need to do nothing but relax.

____
______________ 3–4. Juan plays poker with his ___ Mark. The desire to win ___ Juan to cheat, but he never does.

____
______________ 5–6. The ___ lot on the corner is filled with rusty auto parts and old refrigerators. Parents ___ to their children that they should never play there.

____
______________ 7–8. Since it is raining heavily, it would be ___ for us to ___ our picnic until tomorrow.

Final Check

A. Be Proud of Your Age!

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **benefit**	b. **delay**	c. **emphasize**	d. **logical**

"Young, wrinkle-free skin in two weeks!" "Cover up that gray hair!" "Keep your body fit and young!" Everywhere we look, ads claim° that it is best to do everything we can to stay young. Loudly, the ads (1)________________ one idea over and over: Young is good and old is bad. The message is that we must (2)________________ getting older as long as possible. Sadly, what happens is that as people age, they become unhappy because they don't look twenty anymore. But does this make sense? Wouldn't it be more (3)________________ if we liked ourselves, no matter what our age? Wouldn't we all (4)________________ if we could accept our wrinkles, gray hair, and middle-age bodies? After all, life is meant to be enjoyed, no matter how old we are. Why should we feel bad about looking the age we really are? If we keep seeing life as a race against time, we will end up feeling like losers.

B. Making Anger Work for You

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **rival**	b. **satisfy**	c. **tempted**	d. **vacant**

Everyone has felt angry at one time or another. Maybe you felt angry when a (5)________________ at school teased you, when a boss treated you unfairly, or when a family member said something mean. If you are like most people, your anger may have (6)________________ you to get back at those who made you feel bad. Maybe you wanted to shout at them or even hit them. But this is not a good way to (7)________________ the need to let people know how you feel.

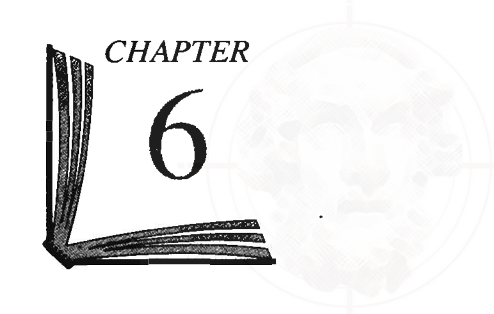
Anger is powerful and can be helpful. However, it must be used in a healthy way. If someone makes you angry, you shouldn't yell and accuse° the person of hurting you, nor should you give the person the silent treatment. Instead, tell the person exactly what it is that upsets you. Once you do that, you and the person can work together to change things so you both feel better.

Here is a real-life example showing how people used their anger in a good way to make their lives better. People living in a city neighborhood were angry. Why? For over a year, they had been promised that a (8)________________ building on their street would be torn down. However, the building was still there and had become home to drug dealers. Instead of sitting around, complaining, and doing nothing but getting even angrier, a group from the neighborhood went to see their mayor. They explained to the mayor how upset they were and how they feared for their children's safety. The mayor listened. And guess what happened! The building was torn down. The neighbors had made good use of their anger and put it to work in the best way possible.

So the next time someone makes you angry, don't strike out against or stop talking to the person. Instead, stay calm and explain why you are angry. You may be surprised by how well things turn out.

Scores	Sentence Check 1	_______%	Final Check	_______%
	Sentence Check 2	_______%		

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





definite	**oppose**
fortunate	**refer**
leisure	**specific**
motivated	**suspect**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 definite
/ˈdefɪnɪt/
– adjective

- Roger did not know his sister's plan to take a vacation was **definite** until he saw a plane ticket on the table.
- With our team ahead by three runs in the final inning, it seemed **definite** that we would win the game.

___*Definite* means a. certain b. not fair c. wrong

2 fortunate
/ˈfɔːtʃənət/
– adjective

- Steve's grandmother is a **fortunate** person. She won the lottery two times in one year.
- I feel **fortunate** to have a comfortable place to live and plenty of food, when so many people in the world have so little.

___*Fortunate* means a. sorry b. scared c. lucky

3 leisure
/ˈliːʒə(r)/
– noun

- When you finally have some **leisure**, you should come to my house and relax with me over a steaming cup of coffee.
- Our boss doesn't like us to have any **leisure** on the job. If there is a second or two when we are not working, she rushes over and asks, "Don't you have anything to do?"

___*Leisure* means a. hard work b. time off c. deep sleep

4 motivated
/ˈməʊtɪveɪt/
– adjective

- A teacher's job is to get students **motivated** so they want to learn.
- Needing money to pay her bills made Maria a **motivated** worker.

___*Motivated* means a. interested and excited b. well-known c. good-looking

5 oppose
/əˈpəʊz/
– verb

- My parents **oppose** my plan to hitchhike across the country. They say hitchhiking would be dangerous.
- I think school uniforms would be a good idea, but the student council **opposes** them.

___*Oppose* means a. are happy about b. are against c. speak about

6 refer
/rɪˈfɜː(r)/
– verb

- My brothers and sisters get angry when my relatives **refer** to me as "the smart one in the family."
- My grandfather **refers** to World War I as "The Great War."

___*Refer to* means a. put a stop to b. be unable to remember c. talk about

7 specific
/speˈsɪfik/
– adjective

- The record-store clerk asked if I needed help finding a **specific** title.
- Of all the conversations I ever had with my father, there was one **specific** talk I will never forget.

___*Specific* means a. special b. boring c. future

8 suspect
/səˈspekt/
– verb

- Some scientists **suspect** that there is life on many planets other than Earth.
- Mr. Bosshart **suspects** that the clothes missing from his store were stolen by an employee.

___*Suspect* means a. hope b. do not think c. believe

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________________ To speak briefly about someone or something
2. ____________________ Interested and excited about doing something
3. ____________________ To be against something
4. ____________________ Lucky
5. ____________________ Free time (for rest or fun)
6. ____________________ To think that something is true or likely to be true
7. ____________________ Limited to just one; exact; particular
8. ____________________ Sure; without doubt; certain

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **definite**	c. **leisure**	e. **opposes**	g. **specific**
b. **fortunate**	d. **motivated**	f. **refers**	h. **suspect**

________________ 1. Working in a hospital, I see many very sick people, which makes me feel ___ that my family and I are well.

________________ 2. Mrs. Soma knew little English when class started. But because she is smart and very ___, she learned fast.

________________ 3. Aunt Ida thinks her new boyfriend loves her, but I ___ he is interested only in her money.

________________ 4. Because she works at two jobs and goes to school at night, Nilsa has very little ___.

________________ 5. The mayor ___ raising taxes — she feels we already pay too many taxes.

________________ 6. It is ___ that Lena is getting married — today I saw an engagement ring on her hand.

________________ 7. Our history teacher always ___ to the country's "good old days."

________________ 8. I am looking for a ___ recipe for chocolate cake, the one my mother used to make with chocolate chips and sour cream.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **definite**	c. **leisure**	e. **oppose**	g. **specific**
b. **fortunate**	d. **motivated**	f. **refer**	h. **suspected**

____
________________ 1–2. Linda went to school to meet her son's teacher. At the meeting, she was happy to hear the teacher ___ to the boy as a ___, hard-working student.

____
________________ 3–4. It is ___ that I have health insurance, because my doctor says it is ___ that I will need an operation.

____
________________ 5–6. Ana ___ that her family might do something special for her birthday, but she did not know their ___ plan — to have a surprise party for her.

____
________________ 7–8. The employees ___ the company's plan to get rid of coffee breaks. Because they work so hard, they feel they need some ___ on the job.

Final Check

A. How Not to Treat Customers

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **definite**	b. **motivated**	c. **specific**	d. **suspect**

There are two department stores in my town. I will call them Store "A" and Store "B." They carry many of the same items. They are about the same size. They look very much the same. But oh, how different they are to shop in. At Store "A," employees are (1) ____________________ to keep customers happy. They help customers find things; they carry packages; they hand out lollipops to children. They will even guide a customer away from a (2)____________________ brand item to something that costs less but is just as good. Customers find that shopping in Store "A" is a very pleasant° experience. The rule in this store seems to be "The customer is always right."

I don't know this for sure, but I (3)____________________ that the rule in Store "B" is "The customer is a big bother." Clerks just stare at customers who ask for help. They talk with fellow employees while customers wait in long lines at the checkout counters. When a customer asks a clerk for information, the clerk often answers, "I don't know," and walks away. Several months ago, I heard that Store "B" might go out of business. Now it is (4)____________________. The store will close by the end of the month. Are you surprised? I'm not!

B. Stuck in the Middle

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **fortunate**	b. **leisure**	c. **oppose**	d. **referring**

Have you ever heard anyone use the term "sandwich generation"? It doesn't have anything to do with eating sandwiches. Instead, when people talk about the "sandwich generation," they are (5)____________________ to adults who are caring for their own children and their aging parents at the same time. People in the sandwich generation are "caught in the middle," like the filling of a sandwich. As people live longer, more and more adults end up taking care of their elderly parents. They may feel torn between giving time to their kids and their parents, all of whom need daily° help. The sandwich generation is so busy that it has very little (6)____________________. If they are lucky, members of the sandwich generation will have relatives who help them with their heavy load. If they are not so (7)____________________, they will have nobody to help them out. They may even have relatives who (8)____________________ everything they try to do. For example, sometimes several members of a family feel strongly that Mom or Dad should never be placed in a nursing home. However, they don't do anything to help the family member who is trying to care for an elderly parent at home. Members of the sandwich generation can easily get overworked and overtired because of everything that is expected of them.

Scores	Sentence Check 1	________%	Final Check	________%
	Sentence Check 2	________%		

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT ONE: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-four words from Unit One. Using the meanings at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24

agreement
attack
benefit
cancel
claim
curious
delay
embarrassed
event
flexible
inspire
logical
minor
odor
original
pleasant
precious
prepare
public
rival
satisfy
suggest
talent
unusual

ACROSS

5. A smell
9. Feeling silly and ashamed
11. To be enough for someone; to fill someone's need or wish
12. To say something is true, often without being able to show that it is so
16. To get ready
20. To offer a thought for others to think about
21. Making sense; using or showing reason
22. Not important
23. To stop something that was planned
24. Not often happening or seen; strange; not usual

DOWN

1. Worth a lot; having great value
2. Open to everyone
3. Easy to like; enjoyable
4. To be helped by something
6. To wait until later to do something; to postpone
7. New; fresh; not like anything else
8. A special skill, often one that someone is born with
10. To hurt; to begin to harm
13. A promise people make to one another
14. Able to bend
15. To get someone to want to do something; to move someone to take action
17. Someone that another person tries to beat in a contest of some kind
18. Wanting to know more about something
19. An important happening

UNIT ONE: Test 1

On the answer line at the left, write the word that best completes each item.

______________ 1. The TV show ___ that a photo of Elvis had been found on the moon.
a. delayed b. claimed c. prepared

______________ 2. My wife and I cannot come to an ___ about whether to spend the holidays with her parents or mine.
a. agreement b. experience c. event

______________ 3. The promise of money can ___ people to do things they know are not right.
a. tempt b. emphasize c. oppose

______________ 4. I cannot remember the ___ time that the train will arrive, but I know it will be in the afternoon.
a. humble b. specific c. motivated

______________ 5. The people in town ___ the government's plan to build a garbage dump near their homes.
a. opposed b. satisfied c. protected

______________ 6. Unless they are angry or afraid, wolves will not ___ a human being.
a. cancel b. emphasize c. attack

______________ 7. In movies made years ago, there was always a handsome hero in love with a beautiful young woman. But the hero had a ___ — a bad guy who wanted the young woman for himself.
a. leisure b. rival c. fact

______________ 8. Jeanne was ___ when she learned she had fallen asleep in class and had snored loudly.
a. precious b. embarrassed c. curious

______________ 9. The most important ___ in our family this year was my grandmother's wedding.
a. talent b. event c. conclusion

______________ 10. Elena's new vocabulary skills have ___ her to read more and to be less shy about talking in class.
a. protected b. inspired c. claimed

______________ 11. To keep up with the news, I read the ___ newspaper. But my husband sticks to *Time* magazine, which comes out only once a week.
a. daily b. humble c. negative

______________ 12. My son seems to have a real ___ for the trumpet. Just two weeks after he started lessons, he could play several songs very well.
a. conclusion b. talent c. rival

(Continues on next page)

_______ 13. I keep coming up with boring ideas for decorating the apartment, but my roommate has several ___ thoughts about what we can do.
a. original b. negative c. public

_______ 14. To ___ for an exam, don't wait until the last minute. Start studying well ahead of time.
a. accuse b. prepare c. identify

_______ 15. To deal with ___, you may find it helpful to exercise. A long walk can make you feel less worried and less nervous.
a. tension b. fact c. agreement

_______ 16. Brenda didn't find the movie at all interesting, but it ___ Omar greatly. He thought it was really funny.
a. entertained b. emphasized c. protected

_______ 17. Small children are ___ about everything. They are always asking questions like "Why is the sky blue?" and "Why can't dogs talk?"
a. pleasant b. flexible c. curious

_______ 18. The people waiting for the subway started to groan when they heard that bad weather had ___ all the trains for at least thirty minutes.
a. motivated b. delayed c. attacked

_______ 19. The ___ of garbage rotting in the hot sun makes me sick to my stomach.
a. odor b. talent c. tension

_______ 20. Skydiving is said to be an exciting ___, but I am in no hurry to try it.
a. experience b. agreement c. conclusion

_______ 21. When your teacher ___ something by writing it on the board, be sure to get the point down in your notebook.
a. protects b. cancels c. emphasizes

_______ 22. Even though his car was destroyed in the accident, James felt ___ because he was able to walk away without a scratch.
a. fortunate b. specific c. negative

_______ 23. People who win awards often say they feel "proud but ___" They want to get across the idea that winning hasn't made them feel like big shots.
a. humble b. flexible c. logical

_______ 24. Tony likes to read. Whenever he has a moment of ___, he grabs a book and finds a nice, quiet spot to read.
a. leisure b. conclusion c. talent

Score (Number correct ______ × 4) + 4 = ______ %

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT ONE: Test 2

PART A

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **accuse**	d. **identify**	g. **produces**	j. **satisfy**
b. **cancel**	e. **negative**	h. **protect**	k. **suggest**
c. **fact**	f. **precious**	i. **referred**	l. **volunteer**

________________ 1. The factory where my wife works ___ vacuum cleaners.

________________ 2. I have a tune running through my head, but I cannot ___ it. I don't know what it's from.

________________ 3. When I was growing up, my mother ran our house like the army. Looking me squarely in the eye one day, she said, "I want a ___ to clean the kitchen — you."

________________ 4. "I really hate to ___ my appointment," Mimi told the dentist. "But I just cannot come. I cannot find a baby sitter."

________________ 5. I felt angry and hurt when my teachers ___ to my older sister as the best student they had ever had.

________________ 6. To ___ the furniture while the living room was being painted, we covered everything with sheets.

________________ 7. When the toaster did not work, my daughter said, "Dad, I ___ you try plugging it in."

________________ 8. Of all the things you own, what is the most ___ to you? What is so important to you that you would be very upset if you lost it?

________________ 9. Do not ___ me of forgetting the tickets! You were the one who was going to bring them!

________________ 10. It is a ___ that February is the shortest month of the year; no one can argue about that.

________________ 11. Gordon's feelings about his new job are very ___. Even though he hasn't started working yet, he expects to dislike the job, to be bored, and to do badly.

________________ 12. One sandwich did not ___ Li's hunger, so he ate two more. Then he felt full.

(Continues on next page)

PART B

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **benefit**	d. **flexible**	g. **motivated**	j. **suspected**
b. **conclusion**	e. **logical**	h. **pleasant**	k. **unusual**
c. **definite**	f. **minor**	i. **public**	l. **vacant**

________________ 13. The ___ of the movie was terrible. At the end, the good guys died and the bad guys went free.

________________ 14. A good fishing pole must be strong but ___. It has to be able to bend without breaking.

________________ 15. One apartment on our floor has been ___ for months. No one wants to rent it because it's too noisy. It's right next to the elevators.

________________ 16. The new restaurant is very ___. It has good food, soft lights, and friendly service.

________________ 17. Because my brother found cake crumbs outside my bedroom door, he ___ that I was the one who had eaten the last of his birthday cake.

________________ 18. When Janice has a problem, she doesn't make decisions based on her feelings. Instead, she is highly ___ and thinks carefully about what she should do.

________________ 19. After listening to the coach's pep talk, the players were so ___ that they felt they could beat the best team in the state.

________________ 20. As a rule, I go to bed at 10:00 p.m. It is ___ for me to be up for the 11:00 news.

________________ 21. It is ___. My insurance *will* cover my hospital stay.

________________ 22. When you are studying a textbook chapter, underline the most important ideas but not the ___ points.

________________ 23. Our school would ___ from two things: a new gym and a better library.

________________ 24. The garden behind the bank is a ___ area. It's open to everyone, not just to people who work at the bank.

Scores	Part A (Adding a Word)	_____ × 5 = %	Part B (Adding a Word)	_____ %

Number right in each part: 12 = 100%, 11 = 92%, 10 = 83%, 9 = 75%, 8 = 67%; 7 = 58%, 6 = 50%, 5 = 42%; 4 = 33%, 3 = 25%. 2 = 17%, 1 = 8%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT ONE: Test 3

PART A

In the space at the left, write the letter of the choice that correctly completes each sentence. In most cases, the correct answer will have the **same** or **almost the same** meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

___ 1. A young man **accused** two teenagers of stealing. That means the young man
a. joined the two teenagers in stealing. b. told the two teenagers about the stealing.
c. said the two teenagers had stolen something.

___ 2. If a teacher **cancels** a class, that means the class
a. will cover important material. b. is called off.
c. will meet as always.

___ 3. If friends say that their plans to move to a new home are **definite**, that means
a. the plans are not clear yet. b. the plans will change.
c. the plans will not change.

___ 4. If a history teacher tests you on the **facts** of the Second World War, you need to know
a. what actually happened during the war. b. why your teacher is so interested in the war.
c. what might have happened if the fighting had ended earlier.

___ 5. I would like to **identify** the beautiful flowers in my neighbor's garden. In other words, I would like to
a. find out what kind of flowers they are. b. plant the flowers.
c. take the flowers.

___ 6. If a company **produces** candy, that means it
a. buys candy and then sells it to people. b. makes the candy.
c. wraps the candy for the candymaker.

___ 7. If my boots **protect** me from the rain and snow, they
a. keep out the wet and cold. b. leak, so that my feet get wet and cold.
c. need to be replaced.

___ 8. If you **refer** to a trip you took, you
a. speak of the trip. b. tell your friends not to take the same trip.
c. say you will go someplace else next time.

___ 9. If I say that one scoop of ice cream **satisfies** me, I mean that
a. one scoop is enough for me. b. having one scoop will not be enough for me.
c. I would rather have a doughnut.

___10. If I **suggest** a school project to my children, I
a. give them some ideas to help them get started. b. do much of the project for them.
c. tell them they should not come to me for help.

___11. If you **suspect** that two relatives sometimes lie, you
a. know for sure that they lie. b. know for sure that they never lie.
c. think that they lie.

(Continues on next page)

___12. When people work as **volunteers**, they
a. receive a large paycheck. b. work without pay.
c. get a paid two-week vacation.

PART B

In the space at the left, write the letter of the choice that is the **opposite** of the **boldfaced** word.

_c_ **Example:** The opposite of **up** is
a. before b. under c. down

___13. The opposite of **benefit** is
a. hurt b. try c. laugh

___14. The opposite of **conclusion** is
a. work b. end c. beginning

___15. The opposite of **flexible** is
a. funny b. sunny c. stiff

___16. The opposite of **logical** is
a. not feeling sad b. not fattening c. not making sense

___17. The opposite of **minor** is
a. very dry b. very important c. very dirty

___18. The opposite of **motivated** is
a. bored b. hungry c. happy

___19. The opposite of **negative** is
a. pretty b. good c. bad

___20. The opposite of **pleasant** is
a. warm b. quiet c. not nice

___21. The opposite of **precious** is
a. not worth much b. not friendly c. not smart

___22. The opposite of **public** is
a. straight b. private c. sweet

___23. The opposite of **tension** is
a. relaxation b. noise c. unhappiness

___24. The opposite of **vacant** is
a. cheap b. in use c. falling apart

Scores Part A (Same Meanings) ______%	Part B (Opposite Meanings) ______%

Number right in each part: 12 = 100%, 11 = 92%, 10 = 83%, 9 = 75%, 8 = 67%; 7 = 58%, 6 = 50%, 5 = 42%; 4 = 33%, 3 = 25%. 2 = 17%, 1 = 8%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

Unit Two

Chapter 7

aware	distressed
constant	modern
devour	occasion
discover	popular

Chapter 8

ability	glance
create	gratitude
damage	introduce
failure	labor

Chapter 9

avoid	intend
excuse	normal
helpless	sociable
include	struggle

Chapter 10

approach	numerous
damp	previous
ignore	require
loyal	timid

Chapter 11

capable	opportunity
careless	resist
furious	reverse
observe	tradition

Chapter 12

allow	persist
comfortable	respect
distract	sensitive
insulting	wonder

UNIT TWO: Pretest

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **aware** a) sad about something b) ashamed of something c) knowing about something

____ 2. **constant** a) never-ending b) quiet c) sad

____ 3. **devour** a) to make b) to eat quickly c) to save for later

____ 4. **discover** a) to lose b) to sell c) to find

____ 5. **distressed** a) full of energy b) upset c) up-to-date

____ 6. **modern** a) up-to-date b) broken down c) strong

____ 7. **occasion** a) a car b) a special time c) a boring time

____ 8. **popular** a) healthy b) not known c) well-liked

____ 9. **ability** a) a feeling of thanks b) a special skill c) a wish

____ 10. **create** a) to study b) to make c) to look at quickly

____ 11. **damage** a) hard work b) safety c) harm

____ 12. **failure** a) something that works easily b) something that works well c) something that does not turn out well

____ 13. **glance** a) to look quickly b) to listen carefully c) to keep from looking

____ 14. **gratitude** a) anger b) thanks c) worry

____ 15. **introduce** a) sell something to someone b) not agree with someone c) meet someone for the first time

____ 16. **labor** a) space b) quiet c) hard work

____ 17. **avoid** a) to get closer to b) to keep away from c) to enjoy

____ 18. **excuse** a) a reason b) a happy time c) a question

____ 19. **helpless** a) not able to see well b) not able to take care of oneself c) not very well known

____ 20. **include** a) to be without b) to stay away from c) to be made up of

____ 21. **intend** a) to forget b) to hate c) to plan

____ 22. **normal** a) usual b) strange c) easily hurt

____ 23. **sociable** a) quiet b) friendly c) angry

____ 24. **struggle** a) a boring time b) an easy time c) a difficult time

_____ 25. **approach** a) to go away from b) to need c) to come near

_____ 26. **damp** a) clean b) a little wet c) good-smelling

_____ 27. **ignore** a) to know b) to pay no attention to c) to need

_____ 28. **loyal** a) faithful b) mean c) helpful

_____ 29. **numerous** a) few b) ugly c) many

_____ 30. **previous** a) next b) earlier c) favorite

_____ 31. **require** a) to send away b) to do without c) to need

_____ 32. **timid** a) shy b) noisy c) old

_____ 33. **capable** a) having skill b) not ready c) not careful

_____ 34. **careless** a) intelligent b) not careful c) cheerful

_____ 35. **furious** a) helpful b) quiet c) angry

_____ 36. **observe** a) to miss b) to copy c) to watch

_____ 37. **opportunity** a) a problem b) a habit c) a chance

_____ 38. **resist** a) to answer b) to say no to c) to invite

_____ 39. **reverse** a) to say loudly b) to keep c) to turn around

_____ 40. **tradition** a) a handed-down way of doing something b) a fight c) a difficult time

_____ 41. **allow** a) to hate b) to let c) to stop

_____ 42. **comfortable** a) relaxed b) mean c) thirsty

_____ 43. **distract** a) to have questions about b) to make clean c) to take away attention

_____ 44. **insulting** a) kind b) easy to understand c) hurtful

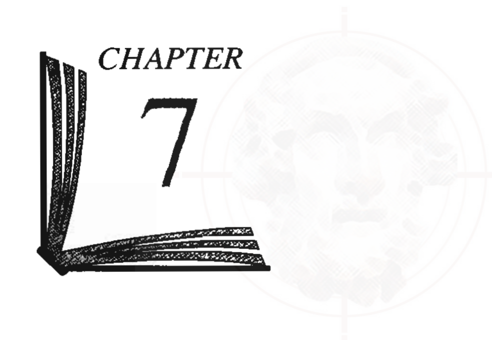
_____ 45. **persist** a) to give up easily b) to keep doing something c) to forget

_____ 46. **respect** a) a great happiness b) a great liking c) a great anger

_____ 47. **sensitive** a) not caring b) happy c) understanding

_____ 48. **wonder** a) to want to know b) to answer c) to blame

SCORE: (Number correct _______ × 2) + 4 = _________ %



CHAPTER 7



aware	**distressed**
constant	**modern**
devour	**occasion**
discover	**popular**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 aware
/ə'weə(r)/
– adjective

- The warnings on the radio made everyone **aware** of the dangerous icy roads.
- Even though Mr. and Mrs. Patel were **aware** that their children were planning an anniversary party, they acted as if they knew nothing about it.

___*Aware* means   a. sad   b. ashamed   c. knowing

2 constant
/'kɒnstənt/
– adjective

- Because there are three teenagers in our family, the phone is in **constant** use.
- All night long, I hear the **constant** sound of a dog barking outside my window.

___*Constant* means   a. never-ending   b. quiet   c. sad

3 devour
/dɪ'vaʊə(r)/
– verb

- I want to **devour** the last piece of chocolate fudge cake myself before anyone else has a chance to eat it.
- By accident, my family **devoured** the cherry cheesecake that I had made for my girlfriend's graduation.

___*Devour* means   a. make   b. eat quickly   c. save for later

4 discover
/dɪs'kʌvə(r)/
– verb

- It took my four-year old sister only minutes to **discover** a secret hiding place in my new apartment.
- Not long ago, scientists **discovered** a two-thousand-year-old ship sitting on the bottom of the ocean.

___*Discover* means   a. lose   b. sell   c. find

5 distressed
/dɪ'strest/
– adjective

- The kitten, crying loudly from the top of the tree, was too **distressed** to move.
- The workers were **distressed** after hearing that the factory would close and they would lose their jobs.

___*Distressed* means   a. full of energy   b. upset   c. up-to-date

6 modern
/ˈmɒdən/
– adjective

- Instead of using **modern** machines, the Amish prefer old-fashioned machines pulled by horses.
- Dad doesn't like **modern** music. He would rather listen to music written thirty years ago.

___*Modern* means a. up-to-date b. broken down c. strong

7 occasion
/əˈkeɪʒən/
– noun

- Halloween is a great **occasion** for most children.
- Tom hates to dress up. Even on special **occasions** like birthdays and anniversaries, he wears jeans and sneakers.

___*Occasion* means a. regular day b. special time c. boring time

8 popular
/ˈpɒpjʊlə(r)/
– adjective

- The Beatles and Elvis Presley are among the most **popular** performers of all time.
- Eva is liked by her teachers and is also **popular** with her classmates.

___*Popular* means a. healthy b. not known c. well-liked

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________ To find something for the first time; to come upon something
2. ____________ A time when something takes place, often something special; an event
3. ____________ Knowing about something; having knowledge
4. ____________ Never stopping; always happening; happening again and again
5. ____________ To eat quickly and hungrily
6. ____________ Of the present time; up-to-date; not old-fashioned
7. ____________ Liked by many people
8. ____________ Very upset; troubled

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **aware**	c. **devour**	e. **distressed**	g. **occasion**
b. **constant**	d. **discovered**	f. **modern**	h. **popular**

________ 1. It took Greg's dog only thirty seconds to ___ a full bowl of food.

________ 2. Sara's little sister was ___ when her pet snake died.

________ 3. To look up the meanings of new words like "software" and "hard drive," you need a good ___ dictionary.

________ 4. The last time I saw Aunt Bonita was at a very special ___ — her daughter's wedding.

________ 5. Phil was happy the day he ___ a shortcut to work.

________ 6. Since Steve had missed class, he was not ___ that his teacher had changed the day for the final exam.

________ 7. Small children can tire a parent with their ___ questions — like "Why doesn't the sky fall down?" and "Why does it get dark when I close my eyes?"

________ 8. The restaurant runs out of taco salad almost every day. It's the most ___ dish on the menu.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **aware**	c. **devour**	e. **distressed**	g. **occasions**
b. **constant**	d. **discovered**	f. **modern**	h. **popular**

____
________ 1–2. The World Series and Super Bowl have become so ___ that many Americans watch them together as if they were important family ___.

____
________ 3–4. Because of my ___ hunger for sweets, I can quickly ___ a whole box of chocolate-chip cookies.

____
________ 5–6. ___ medicine has ___ cures for many diseases that used to kill people.

____
________ 7–8. Because we hid in the trees, the animals were not ___ of us and never got frightened or ___.

Final Check

A. The Joy of Ice Cream

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **devour**	b. **modern**	c. **occasions**	d. **popular**

For hundreds of years, people have enjoyed ice cream. No one is sure when people first started to (1)______________________ the frozen treat. But paintings show an icy dessert being enjoyed as far back as the twelfth century. Ice cream as we know it became (2)___________________ among the rich and powerful in Europe during the 1500s. King Charles I of England liked ice cream so much he made a law which said that it could be served only at his table. He even said that he would have his chef's head cut off if the chef gave his secret ice-cream recipe to anyone. To Charles, the food was much too precious° to share. In the United States, too, ice cream was eaten on special (3)___________________ by the country's richest people. George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, and James Madison were all big fans of the frozen dessert. However, ice cream did not reach the rest of the nation until 1845. At that time, a New Jersey woman made a hand-held ice-cream maker. Thanks to that machine, ice cream in the (4)______________________ world is not just for kings and presidents. Now it's for all of us!

B. A Noisy Apartment

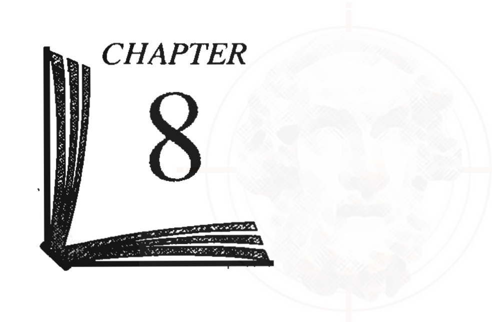
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **aware**	b. **constant**	c. **discover**	d. **distressed**

When Carla decided to move out of her parents' house, she thought it might be hard to find a nice apartment for a low rent. So she felt fortunate° to (5)___________________ a clean and pretty little apartment that was not too expensive. Within a week of moving in, though, she was not so happy. When she had rented the place, she had not seen how close it was to the train tracks. Soon she became very (6)______________________ of the noise from the trains. In fact, the noise was almost (7)______________________ because trains went roaring past several times every hour, day and night. At first, Carla was really (8)______________________. She even thought about moving. But she decided to stay six weeks to see if she could get used to the noise. Little by little, she did. Now the noise does not bother her at all. When friends ask, "How can you bear that noise?" she answers, "What noise?"

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ________%	Final Check ________%
	Sentence Check 2 ________%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.


CHAPTER 8



ability	**glance**
create	**gratitude**
damage	**introduce**
failure	**labor**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 ability
/ə'bɪlətɪ/
– noun

- Many animals, such as cats and deer, have the **ability** to see at night.
- When my teacher saw me in the school play, she said I had the **ability** to be a good actor.

___*Ability* means a. feeling of thanks b. special power c. wish

2 create
/kriː'eɪt/
– verb

- Children like to **create** drawings that their parents can put up on the refrigerator.
- Starting with a ball of gray clay, I **created** a small bowl that I liked a lot.

___*Create* means a. study b. make c. look at quickly

3 damage
/'dæmɪdʒ/
– noun

- Even though the accident was not bad, there was a lot of **damage** to Julia's car.
- **Damage** caused by the hurricane was so great that many people could not find their homes.

___*Damage* means a. hard work b. danger c. harm

4 failure
/'feɪljə(r)/
– noun

- The dinner that Rashid cooked for Janelle was a **failure**. Everything was burned to a crisp.
- When she was turned down for the job she wanted badly, Betsy felt like a **failure**.

___*Failure* means a. something that works easily b. something that works well c. something that doesn't turn out well

5 glance
/glɑːns/
– verb

- The sun is so bright that if you just **glance** at it, you can hurt your eyes.
- Instead of reading the directions carefully, Leon simply **glanced** at the box before trying to put the toy together.

___*Glance* means a. look quickly b. listen carefully c. keep from looking

6 gratitude
/ˈgrætɪtjuːd/
– noun

- Because of his **gratitude** for my working overtime, the boss gave me an extra day of vacation.
- When friends help you or do you a favor, it's good to show them **gratitude** for what they did.

___*Gratitude* means a. anger b. thanks c. worry

7 introduce
/ˌɪntrəˈdjuːs/
– verb

- As soon as the moving van leaves, we will go next door and **introduce** ourselves to our new neighbors.
- Someonee **introduced** Jenna to me in kindergarten, and we have been friends ever since.

___*Introduce* means a. sell something to someone b. not agree with someone c. meet someone for the first time

8 labor
/ˈleɪbə(r)/
– noun

- The beautiful tablecloth is the result of months of my grandmother's **labor**.
- It will take a full day of **labor** to clean out the garage.

___*Labor* means a. space b. quiet c. hard work

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ________________ A feeling or showing of thanks; thankfulness
2. ________________ Harm; injury
3. ________________ The skill or power to do something
4. ________________ Hard work
5. ________________ To make one person known to another for the first time
6. ________________ To make something; to bring something into being
7. ________________ To look at something quickly; to take a fast look at something
8. ________________ Someone or something that does not turn out well; someone or something that fails

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **ability**	c. **damage**	e. **glanced**	g. **introduce**
b. **create**	d. **failure**	f. **gratitude**	h. **labor**

________________ 1. After I shoveled her walkway, my neighbor was so happy she gave me a hug to show her ___.

________________ 2. On TV and in the movies, Superman has the ___ to fly.

________________ 3. Even though we only ___ at the bedroom set in the store window, we knew right away that it was the one we wanted.

________________ 4. Every year, insects that eat wood cause millions of dollars of ___ in homes across the country.

________________ 5. As a dancer, I am a ___ because I can't move my arms and legs at the same time.

________________ 6. At the party, I will ___ you to my cousin. I think you will like her.

________________ 7. It took thousands of workers and many years of hard ___ to build the Pyramids in Egypt.

________________ 8. Chang used several boards to ___ a desk.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **ability**	c. **damage**	e. **glance**	g. **introduced**
b. **created**	d. **failure**	f. **gratitude**	h. **labor**

________________ 1–2. After many hours of ___ in the kitchen, Paul's sister ___ some
________________ wonderful cookies — and a big mess.

________________ 3–4. Because of his doctor's great ___, the ___ to my father's heart could be
________________ repaired.

________________ 5–6. When Jamal ___ his parents to his teacher, they told her how much
________________ ___ they had for the extra help she had given their son.

________________ 7–8. I had only to ___ at the bookcase I had made to know that it was a
________________ ___. Not one of the shelves was straight.

Final Check

A. Nuts in the Senate

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **created**	b. **failure**	c. **glanced**	d. **introduced**

On a cold winter day in 1921, an interesting event° took place. A man spoke to the United States Senate about something he thought was very important: peanuts. The man's name was George Washington Carver. When the senators found out what he came to talk about, at first they laughed. But that did not stop Carver or make him feel like a (1)__________________. Carver, an African-American scientist, believed so much in peanuts that he wanted the Senate to pass laws to help farmers who grew them. After someone (2)__________________ him to the senators, Carver showed them many interesting things. He began with several items that he had (3)__________________ out of peanuts — dye, soap, wood stain, and gravy. Next, he handed out paper made from peanut shells, shaving cream made from peanut oil, and rubber made from the nut itself. But he saved the best for last. Just as Carver's time was almost up, one of the senators asked, "What is the brown stuff in the jar you are holding?" Carver (4)__________________ at the man and smiled. Opening the jar, he let the senators smell and then taste what was inside. Much to their surprise, the "brown stuff" smelled good and tasted even better. By the end of the day, the Senate had passed the law Carver wanted, and the nation had begun its love affair with — you guessed it — peanut butter!

B. Calling Dr. Leech

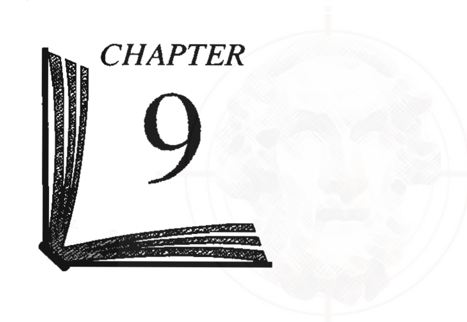
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **ability**	b. **damage**	c. **gratitude**	d. **labor**

When the ear of seven-year-old Jimmy Taylor was nearly torn off by a dog, the doctors didn't know if they could help. They spent hours trying to repair the (5)__________________. But after all their (6)__________________, Jimmy's ear was not getting better. Instead, the blood in his ear began to dry up, and the ear puffed up and turned blue. The doctors knew that Jimmy would lose his ear unless they acted quickly. So they decided on an unusual° treatment that is not often followed today but was widely used hundreds of years ago. They decided to use leeches, bloodsucking worms that live in ponds and lakes. In the mouth of a leech are juices that have the (7)__________________ to break up dried-up blood, letting the blood flow freely again. The blood then helps the problem area get better. Six leeches were rushed to the hospital to feed on the dried-up blood in Jimmy's ear. The doctors made small holes in the skin of Jimmy's ear and placed the hungry leeches at the holes. After just a few hours, the ear turned a pink, healthy color. It was clear that Jimmy's ear would be saved. Did Jimmy show any (8)__________________ to his wormy helpers? Not really. When he found out that it was leeches that had saved his ear, all he could do was make a face and say, "Yuck!"

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ______%	Final Check ______%
	Sentence Check 2 ______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.



CHAPTER 9



avoid	**intend**
excuse	**normal**
helpless	**sociable**
include	**struggle**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 avoid
/ə'vɔɪd/
– verb

- One way to stay healthy is to **avoid** foods with a lot of sugar and fat.
- Steven **avoided** getting stuck in a traffic jam by taking another road to get to work.

___ *Avoid* means a. get closer to b. keep away from c. enjoy

2 excuse
/ɪk'skjuːz/
– noun

- Cora's **excuse** for not handing in her homework was that it had gotten wet in the rain.
- Instead of saying that he did not want to go to the party, Bill made up an **excuse** about having a bad cold.

___ *Excuse* means a. reason b. happy time c. question

3 helpless
/'helplɪs/
– adjective

- Newborn babies are completely **helpless**. They need adults to do everything for them.
- When I broke my hip, I was **helpless** for six weeks. I could not even get myself something to eat.

___ *Helpless* means a. not able to see well b. not able to take care of oneself c. not very well known

4 include
/ɪn'kluːd/
– verb

- The new band will **include** a drummer, a singer, and a guitar player.
- Pedro's costume for the Halloween party **includes** a rubber mask, a purple wig, and a long black cape.

___ *Include* means a. be without b. stay away from c. be made up of

5 intend
/ɪn'tend/
– verb

- After working outside in the hot sun for hours, I **intend** to go home and take a cold shower.
- Greg **intended** to spend his paycheck on a nice vacation, but then his car broke down.

___ *Intend* means a. forget b. hate c. plan

6 normal
/ˈnɔːməl/
– adjective

- The parents were happy to learn that their little boy's fear of the dark was **normal**.
- The **normal** time for the class to begin is 9 a.m., but today we will meet at 11 a.m.

___*Normal* means   a. usual   b. strange   c. easily hurt

7 sociable
/ˈsəʊʃəbl/
– adjective

- Eric is shy and doesn't like parties, but his sister is very **sociable**.
- The store wants to hire a **sociable** person to say hello to customers as they walk through the door.

___*Sociable* means   a. quiet   b. friendly   c. angry

8 struggle
/ˈstrʌgl/
– noun

- Rita did well in her English course, but the class was a real **struggle** for her at first.
- It is a **struggle** to work and go to school at the same time.

___*Struggle* means   a. boring time   b. easy time   c. difficult time

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ________________ A reason, often not true, why something happened
2. ________________ To plan to do something
3. ________________ To stay away from someone or something
4. ________________ Friendly; enjoying the company of others
5. ________________ A hard and difficult time
6. ________________ Unable to take care of oneself
7. ________________ Usual; regular
8. ________________ To be made up of; to have within itself

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **avoided**	c. **helpless**	e. **intended**	g. **sociable**
b. **excuse**	d. **includes**	f. **normal**	h. **struggle**

______ 1. The teacher had ___ to give a test on Friday, but then she saw that half the class was absent.

______ 2. Many people feel ___ at fancy restaurants. They always need to ask their friends what they should order and how much they should tip.

______ 3. When Bill caught the flu, his friends ___ him so they wouldn't get sick, too.

______ 4. Because Eva is so ___, she wants a job where she will work with people.

______ 5. Sira's ___ for not going to basketball practice was that she couldn't find her sneakers.

______ 6. A ___. workday runs from about 9 a.m. to 5 p.m.

______ 7. To Joanne, a weekend is not perfect unless it ___ sleeping late, seeing friends, and going to a movie.

______ 8. It was a ___ for Thien to save enough money to bring his parents to this country.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **avoid**	c. **helpless**	e. **intend**	g. **sociable**
b. **excuse**	d. **includes**	f. **normal**	h. **struggle**

______
______ 1–2. In order to ___ hurting Bruno's feelings, Rosa made up an ___ to explain why she was not able to go to the movies with him.

______
______ 3–4. A ___ day at a fast-food restaurant ___ getting covered in grease, getting burned by hot ovens, and being yelled at by customers.

______
______ 5–6. Before going to the city next weekend, I ___ to buy a map and a guidebook. Without them, I would feel lost and ___.

______
______ 7–8. For ___ people, speaking in front of crowds is often easy. But for shy folks, talking to large groups can be a real ___.

Final Check

A. TV and Violence

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **avoid**	b. **excuse**	c. **includes**	d. **normal**

Would you want someone teaching your kids how to be mean and hurtful? That is often what happens when kids watch television. Today's most-watched TV shows are filled with violence and crime. And no one watches more of these shows than America's kids. In a (1)__________________ week, many children sit in front of the TV set for more than twenty-seven hours. By the time kids finish grade school, they have seen over 100,000 acts of people using force to cause harm. This number (2)__________________ more than 8,000 killings. By the time kids graduate from high school, they will have spent more time watching TV than sitting in the classroom or talking with their families. The effects of watching this much TV are scary. Studies show that when kids watch people fighting and shooting each other, they are more likely to be violent themselves. True, in the modern° world, it is hard for kids to (3)__________________ watching TV. But that is no (4)__________________ for parents to let their kids watch whatever they want. If parents find that their kids are watching one violent show after another, the adults must act. What should they do? They should get up, turn off the TV, and help the kids find better ways to spend their time.

B. Are You Ready for a Pet?

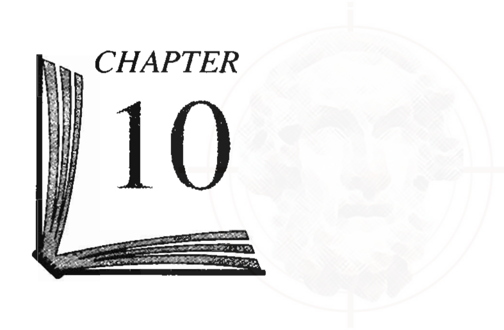
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **helpless**	b. **intend**	c. **sociable**	d. **struggle**

If you (5)__________________ to get a pet, make sure you know what you are doing. A new pet may be cute, but it also means lots of work. Puppies, for example, are friendly, (6)__________________ animals. They like to be around people, but they also like to chew things. And to them, it does not matter whether they are chewing your kitchen table or your leather jacket. Teaching puppies not to destroy things and be housetrained can be a long, hard (7)__________________ that lasts for months. Kittens also can make life difficult. Those sweet little animals scratch everything in sight. In no time, a kitten's sharp claws can rip a new sofa apart, causing damage° that cannot be fixed. What about smaller pets such as goldfish? They may not take as much everyday work as dogs and cats. However, fish often get sick, and they are completely (8)__________________ if they jump out of their tank. The time and money you spend at the vet's office can really add up. For all the fun and friendship pets give, they are also a lot of work and expense. Keep that in mind before you bring one home.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 _______%	Final Check _______%
	Sentence Check 2 _______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





approach	**numerous**
damp	**previous**
ignore	**require**
loyal	**timid**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 **approach**
/ə'prəutʃ/
– verb

- As you **approach** a stop sign, slow your car down and get ready to stop.
- The man on the corner **approached** us and said, "Do you have any extra change?"

___*Approach* means a. go away from b. need c. come near

2 **damp**
/dæmp/
– adjective

- At the ocean, clothes often feel sticky and **damp**.
- I got angry when I saw my roommate's **damp**, dirty socks on the table.

___*Damp* means a. clean b. a bit wet c. good-smelling

3 **ignore**
/ɪg'nɔː(r)/
– verb

- It is hard to **ignore** the smell of delicious food when you are really hungry.
- When Ruby **ignored** her little girl's question, the child shouted it loudly.

___*Ignore* means a. know b. pay no attention to c. need

4 **loyal**
/'lɔɪəl/
– adjective

- I read about a dog in England who was so **loyal** to his owner that after the man died, the dog went to his grave every day.
- No matter how many games they lose, Connie is **loyal** to her favorite baseball team.

___*Loyal* means a. faithful b. mean c. helpful

5 **numerous**
/njuːmərəs/
– adjective

- On a clear evening, you can see **numerous** stars in the night sky.
- Although Mr. Colon has **numerous** reasons why he has not stopped smoking, none of them is a good one.

___*Numerous* means a. a few b. ugly c. lots of

6 previous
/ˈpriːvɪəs/
– adjective

- It's hard to understand what's going on in a TV soap opera if you haven't seen the show the **previous** day.
- Robert married a woman who had two children from a **previous** marriage.

___*Previous* means a. next b. earlier c. favorite

7 require
/rɪˈkwaɪə(r)/
– verb

- Many jobs today **require** employees who know how to use a computer.
- When we went camping, we couldn't take our three dogs with us in the van. They **require** too much space.

___*Require* means a. send away b. do without c. need

8 timid
/ˈtɪmɪd/
– adjective

- On the first day of kindergarten, most children in the class were too **timid** to speak.
- It is hard for a **timid** person to talk in front of a group.

___*Timid* means a. fearful b. noisy c. old

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________________ Ready to stand by or stand up for someone; faithful
2. ____________________ Many
3. ____________________ Earlier; happening before something else
4. ____________________ A little wet; moist
5. ____________________ To need something
6. ____________________ To come close or closer to someone or something
7. ____________________ To pay no attention to something
8. ____________________ Shy

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **approached**	c. **ignored**	e. **numerous**	g. **require**
b. **damp**	d. **loyal**	f. **previous**	h. **timid**

________ 1. Steve is a truck driver now. In his ___ job, he was a cook in a restaurant.

________ 2. After Mona played basketball, her clothes were ___ with sweat.

________ 3. Although he was born in another country, Akira is so ___ to the United States that he joined the Army.

________ 4. The Halloween trick-or-treaters put on their masks as they ___ each house.

________ 5. The school offers ___ art classes, including watercolor painting and cartoon drawing.

________ 6. Betty ___ what the doctor told her to do and ended up so sick that she missed work for a week.

________ 7. To feel rested, I ___ seven or eight hours of sleep each night.

________ 8. Most people feel a bit ___ at parties where they don't know anyone.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **approached**	c. **ignores**	e. **numerous**	g. **requires**
b. **damp**	d. **loyal**	f. **previous**	h. **timid**

____
________ 1–2. Lawrence is always ___ to his friends. He ___ anything bad he hears about them and pays attention only to the good things.

____
________ 3–4. Tonya's new hairstyle ___ a lot of work. The hair has to be set on big rollers while it is still ___ from being washed.

____
________ 5–6. I gave ___ reasons why I couldn't sing in the choir, but the real reason was that I was too ___ to try out.

____
________ 7–8. When I was out in the yard, my new neighbor ___ me to ask if I knew the ___ owner of her house well.

Final Check

A. Help for Shy People

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **damp**	b. **numerous**	c. **require**	d. **timid**

Many people are a little shy. In fact, probably everyone feels shy once in a while. But some people are so (1)_________________ that it makes their lives difficult. For them, making everyday conversation — even with people they know — can be a struggle°. And the thought of speaking to a stranger makes their hands (2)_________________ with sweat. Being so shy gets in the way of having friends or doing well at school or on the job.

Many adult-education schools offer courses to help shy people. Shy people (3)_________________ practice in talking to strangers. So the teacher of such a course may ask students to speak to class members they don't know. Students are also given (4)_________________ tricks for getting over their shyness. For example, they might be told to think about a friend who is outgoing and friendly; then they make believe they are that person and try to act as he or she would. Students also are given interesting assignments to do at home. One assignment might be for students to start a conversation with someone they don't know but have always wanted to meet. After a while, the students in these classes learn to relax, make friends, and enjoy life more.

B. Not a Laughing Matter

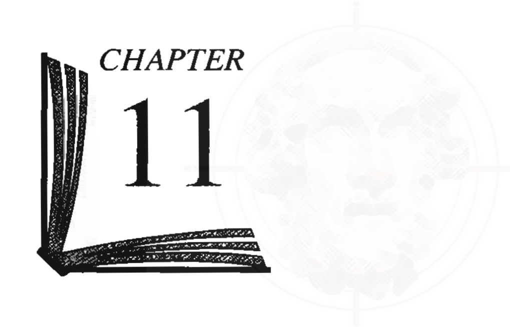
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **approached**	b. **ignored**	c. **loyal**	d. **previous**

The other day, I had lunch with a group of friends from work. My friend Patty, who recently remarried and has two children, was in the group. While we were eating, one of the men said something mean about his ex-wife. Some people laughed, but Patty (5)_________________ what he said. A little later, he made another mean joke about his ex-wife. Then he (6)_________________ Patty and said, "What about you? Tell us about your (7)_________________ husband. What kind of jerk was he?" Patty replied, "My ex-husband and I had our problems. But I am not going to make fun of him just so you can have a laugh. I married him because he's a good guy in many ways. We had a couple of wonderful kids together. Our marriage is over, but I still feel (8)_________________ to him. I don't want him laughing about me with his friends. And I do not intend° to laugh at him either." Everybody at the table was quiet. We quickly started talking about something else. There were no more dumb jokes that day about an ex-husband or an ex-wife.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ______%	Final Check ______%
	Sentence Check 2 ______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.




CHAPTER 11

capable	**opportunity**
careless	**resist**
furious	**reverse**
observe	**tradition**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 capable
/ˈkeɪpəbl/
– adjective

• Only the most **capable** runners should try a twenty-six-mile race.

• Of all the people who applied for the job, Maya was the most **capable**, so she was hired.

___ *Capable* means   a. having skill   b. not ready   c. not careful

2 careless
/ˈkeəlɪs/
– adjective

• Each year hundreds of fires are started by **careless** smokers.

• The **careless** painter splashed drops of paint all over the carpet.

___ *Careless* means   a. intelligent   b. not careful   c. cheerful

3 furious
/ˈfjʊərɪəs/
– adjective

• People who cannot control their tempers often become **furious** over small problems.

• My parents were **furious** when I tracked mud all over the clean kitchen floor just before their guests arrived.

___ *Furious* means   a. helpful   b. quiet   c. angry

4 observe
/əbˈzɜːv/
– verb

• Mirrors hanging high in the corners of the store let the owner **observe** people who might be stealing.

• The lifeguards at the pool closely **observed** the kids in the water.

___ *Observe* means   a. miss   b. copy   c. watch

5 opportunity
/ˌɒpəˈtjuːnətɪ/
– noun

• Because of his excellent grades, Kevin has the **opportunity** to go to a top-rated college.

• Sheila's job gives her the **opportunity** to meet many interesting people.

___ *Opportunity* means   a. problem   b. habit   c. chance

6 resist
/vɪˈzɪst/
– verb

- Many people are strong and can **resist** a hot fudge sundae topped with whipped cream, nuts, and a cherry. I'm not one of those people.
- The children **resisted** sleep as long as they could. Then they went to bed.

___*Resist* means a. answer b. say no to c. invite

7 reverse
/rɪˈvɜːs/
– verb

- As a little girl, I liked to **reverse** the order of dinner and start with dessert.
- My father likes to **reverse** our home movies so that it looks as if everyone is walking backward.

___*Reverse* means a. say loudly b. keep c. turn around

8 tradition
/trəˈdɪʃən/
– noun

- It is a Latin American **tradition** to have a special party on a girl's fifteenth birthday.
- Two **traditions** in the United States are watching fireworks on the Fourth of July and eating turkey on Thanksgiving.

___*Tradition* means a. handed-down way of doing something b. law c. difficult time

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________________ A chance to do something that will probably lead to good things
2. ____________________ Paying little or no attention; not careful
3. ____________________ Very angry
4. ____________________ To keep from doing something
5. ____________________ To see and pay attention to something
6. ____________________ A special way of doing something that is passed down from older to younger people; a custom
7. ____________________ Having the skill to do something; able
8. ____________________ To turn something around; to go in the opposite direction

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **capable**	c. **furious**	e. **opportunity**	g. **reversed**
b. **careless**	d. **observes**	f. **resist**	h. **tradition**

_______________ 1. Research shows that people who often become ___ have more heart problems than those who are slow to anger.

_______________ 2. At first, Mom said I could not borrow the car, but then she ___ her decision and gave me the keys.

_______________ 3. Even good students can become ___ if they rush to get their work done.

_______________ 4. Dolphins and bats are ___ of hearing sounds that people cannot hear.

_______________ 5. For many children throughout the world, Halloween is a day to wear masks and tell ghost stories. This scary ___ is believed to be hundreds of years old.

_______________ 6. The school principal ___ a different classroom every day, just to see how students and teachers are doing.

_______________ 7. Since I don't really love candy, I can easily ___ it.

_______________ 8. Hector takes every ___ to spend time with his children. He tries to get them up every morning and to put them to bed every night.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **capable**	c. **furious**	e. **opportunity**	g. **reverses**
b. **careless**	d. **observe**	f. **resist**	h. **tradition**

____
_______________ 1–2. Although she doesn't eat meat, Donna ___ her position every Thanksgiving. Following ___, she has turkey with stuffing.

____
_______________ 3–4. Without thinking, Andrew turned down an ___ to see the President of the United States in person. Now he is ___ at himself.

____
_______________ 5–6. Most people are ___ of keeping their weight down if they exercise often and ___ fatty foods.

____
_______________ 7–8. When you are driving on the highway, you must ___ everything around you. It takes only one ___ mistake to cause an accident.

Final Check

A. Taking Risks

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **capable**	b. **observe**	c. **opportunities**	d. **resist**

Taking risks in life can make us feel good about ourselves. All of us should try something new — even something scary — every once in a while. Each of us is (1)____________________ of taking chances, but we often don't. Instead, we sometimes let good (2)____________________ pass us by because they seem a bit too risky. Maybe we don't apply for an exciting new job because we are not sure we can handle it. Perhaps we delay° returning to school because we are afraid that the work will be too hard. Maybe we walk away from a relationship because it is becoming more important than we had planned.

If you (3)____________________ yourself getting frightened by something new and different, that is all the more reason to face it head-on and not run away. Finding that you have the strength inside to overcome your fears will make you feel proud of yourself. You will begin to feel that you have what it takes to get through even the difficult times. So if you want to move ahead in life, with your head held high, don't (4)____________________ making a change or taking a chance. Go for it.

B. Bad Manners Hurt Everyone

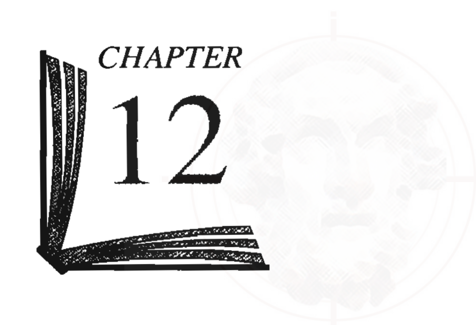
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **careless**	b. **furious**	c. **reverse**	d. **tradition**

Many people these days don't have good manners. Acting as though they are the only people in the world, they are (5)____________________ about the feelings of others. These selfish people ignore° other people's feelings — they pay attention only to their own wishes. They push their way into lines, blast their horns at other drivers, and play loud music late at night when their neighbors are trying to sleep. Such rude behavior makes most of us (6)____________________. Sadly, though, it has gotten to the point where nicely asking people to act more politely can be dangerous. You never know if someone will turn against you violently. It is time to turn things around. It is time to (7)____________________ all this bad behavior. We need to go back to the (8)____________________ of caring about our fellow human beings. Paying attention to our manners is a good place to start.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ______%	Final Check ______%
	Sentence Check 2 ______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





allow	**persist**
comfortable	**respect**
distract	**sensitive**
insulting	**wonder**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 allow
/ə'laʊ/
– verb

- Some schools will **allow** students to wear shorts on days when the weather is very hot.
- Jay's parents **allowed** him to go to the mall after he did his homework.

___*Allow* means a. hate b. let c. stop

2 comfortable
/'kʌmfətəbl/
– adjective

- When Brian first met his girlfriend's parents, he was nervous, but now he is **comfortable** with them.
- The burning sun and the ants made it hard to get **comfortable** at the picnic.

___*Comfortable* means a. relaxed b. mean c. thirsty

3 distract
/dɪs'trækt/
– verb

- When babies want something they can't have, it's a good idea to **distract** them by handing them a favorite toy.
- None of us can study with Julie in the room. The loud way she chews gum **distracts** us.

___*Distract* means a. have questions about b. make clean c. take away attention

4 insulting
/ɪn'sʌltɪŋ/
– adjective

- Rafael is angry because someone wrote an **insulting** message about him on the sidewalk.
- Our boss calls his workers **insulting** names, such as "stupid" and "lazy."

___*Insulting* means a. kind b. easy to understand c. hurtful

5 persist
/pə(r)'sɪst/
– verb

- To reach a goal, you must **persist** rather than giving up at the first sign of a problem.
- The salesperson **persisted** in trying to sell me a car, even after I said I wasn't interested.

___*Persist* means a. give up easily b. keep doing something c. forget

6 respect
/rɪˈspekt/
– noun

- I have **respect** for my aunt because every day she works hard to take care of her young kids and her older parents.
- Because she has so much **respect** for her grandmother, Mona changed out of her torn jeans before visiting her.

___*Respect* means a. great fear b. great liking c. great anger

7 sensitive
/ˈsensɪtɪv/
– adjective

- My dog is **sensitive**. When I am sad, she sits down gently beside me and puts her paw in my lap.
- Pablo is a **sensitive** person. At parties, he always spends time talking to anyone who looks nervous and out of place.

___*Sensitive* means a. not caring b. happy c. caring

8 wonder
/ˈwʌndə(r)/
– verb

- Don't you **wonder** why the dinosaurs died out millions of years ago?
- Everyone **wonders** why Hector and Andrew are angry at one another, but neither of them will talk about it.

___*Wonder* means a. want to know b. answer c. blame

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________________ A feeling of great liking and honor for someone or something; looking up to someone or something
2. ____________________ To want to know or learn about something
3. ____________________ To let someone do something
4. ____________________ Mean; nasty; rude
5. ____________________ To keep doing something, especially when faced with difficulties; to not give up
6. ____________________ To weaken someone's attention
7. ____________________ Relaxed; at ease; in a state of comfort
8. ____________________ Understanding the feelings and needs of others; caring

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **allow**	c. **distracted**	e. **persists**	g. **sensitive**
b. **comfortable**	d. **insulting**	f. **respect**	h. **wondered**

________ 1. Whenever my new kitten sits on my lap, she feels so ___ that she falls asleep.

________ 2. Joseph hasn't found work yet. But he will because he ___ in looking for a job.

________ 3. Because cigarettes are so dangerous, not many parents ___ their children to smoke.

________ 4. The children's fight ___ the bus driver so much that he almost crashed into a tree.

________ 5. My parents taught me to have ___ for education and learning. That's why I have always done well in school.

________ 6. I won't answer Vera when she speaks to me in that ___ tone of voice.

________ 7. We send our children to a ___ doctor. Whenever they are scared, she uses smiles and kind words to take away their fears.

________ 8. We ___ who the man sitting in the back of the class was until the teacher said, "Ladies and gentlemen, I'd like you to meet my brother."

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **allow**	c. **distract**	e. **persisted**	g. **sensitive**
b. **comfortable**	d. **insulting**	f. **respect**	h. **wonder**

____
________ 1–2. At the movies, we asked the man next to us to stop saying rude, ___ things to us. When he ___, we got the manager to throw him out.

____
________ 3–4. Jim is an excellent student and doesn't ___ anyone to ___ him from his homework.

____
________ 5–6. Mr. Brown is a caring, ___ teacher who goes out of his way to make shy students feel ___ in class.

____
________ 7–8. I feel great ___ for my parents. I often ___ how they raised such a large family without losing their tempers.

inal Check

. Two Different Sisters

ead the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each ord once.

a. **comfortable**	b. **distract**	c. **insulting**	d. **sensitive**

Carla and Luisa are sisters. They are both smart young women who work at the same company. But Carla gets along better with others than Luisa. One difference is that Carla is a (1)____________________ person who cares about people and how they feel. If someone looks unhappy, she will always stop and ask if she can help in any way. Luisa, though, never takes the time to see what's bothering a coworker. Because she thinks only of her job, she will not let anything (2)____________________ her from doing her work. However, Carla is sociable° and enjoys joking and having fun with the other workers. If people say to her, "Carla, you are as slow as molasses in January!" she knows they are not serious. But if a coworker makes a gentle joke about Luisa, Luisa gets upset and finds the joke (3)____________________. It's not surprising that many people at work do not feel relaxed or (4)____________________ around Luisa.

. How "Honest Abe" Earned His Name

ead the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each ord once.

a. **allow**	b. **persisted**	c. **respect**	d. **wonder**

When Abraham Lincoln was a young man, he worked as a clerk in a general store. One day a woman came in and bought some things. She paid and went away. But after she left the store, Lincoln began to (5)____________________ if he had added up the bill correctly. Had he been careless°? He looked at the bill again and saw that he had charged the woman six cents too much. It was only a few cents. But Lincoln would not (6)____________________ himself to keep the woman's money. That night, he closed up the store and began walking toward the woman's house, which was several miles away. Although it grew dark, Lincoln (7)____________________ until he reached the woman's home and returned her six cents. After Lincoln became President, even those who disliked him had to give him (8)____________________ for his honesty.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 _______%	Final Check _______%
	Sentence Check 2 _______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT TWO: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-four words from Unit Two. Using the meanings at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.

ability
approach
avoid
capable
careless
damp
excuse
furious
helpless
ignore
include
intend
loyal
normal
numerous
observe
opportunity
previous
require
resist
respect
reverse
sociable
struggle

ACROSS

4. To pay no attention
8. A chance to do something that will probably lead to good things
9. To stay away from someone or something
13. To go in the opposite direction
14. To plan to do something
16. A hard and difficult time
18. To keep from doing something
20. Friendly; enjoying the company of others
22. To be made up of; to have within itself
23. Earlier; happening before something else
24. Usual; regular

DOWN

1. Unable to take care of oneself
2. To come close or closer to someone or something
3. A reason, often not true, why something happened
5. The skill or power to do something
6. Ready to stand by or stand up for someone; faithful
7. Many
10. To see and pay attention to something
11. A little wet; moist
12. To need something
15. Not careful; paying little attention
17. A feeling of great liking and honor for someone or something
19. Having the skill to do something
21. Very angry

UNIT TWO: Test 1

On the answer line at the left, write the word that best completes each item.

_______________ 1. Even a small child is ___ of doing simple jobs around the house, such as clearing the table.

a. capable b. damp c. sociable

_______________ 2. Old-fashioned telephones have round dials, but ___ ones have buttons.

a. helpless b. modern c. insulting

_______________ 3. The art set Lisa got for her birthday ___ markers, colored pencils, and a set of paints.

a. ignores b. devours c. includes

_______________ 4. On the first day of class, the teacher helped the students feel ___ by learning their names and asking friendly questions about their families.

a. comfortable b. numerous c. previous

_______________ 5. Because she is ___, Grandmother likes living with a group of other retired people.

a. insulting b. furious c. sociable

_______________ 6. On those ___ when my children don't have school, I need to find a baby sitter for them.

a. occasions b. excuses c. traditions

_______________ 7. Although our ___ suppertime is 6:30, we did not eat until 8:00 last night.

a. normal b. sensitive c. popular

_______________ 8. When I turned 15, my parents ___ me to wear a little makeup and date.

a. wondered b. created c. allowed

_______________ 9. Born in the United States, Paco was happy to have the ___ to visit Mexico, where both his parents had been raised.

a. respect b. opportunity c. labor

_______________ 10. Although whales need air, they have the ___ to stay under water for as long as two hours.

a. gratitude b. excuse c. ability

_______________ 11. We could tell by the cold weather and shorter days that winter was quickly ___.

a. approaching b. including c. distracting

_______________ 12. When my parents said they wanted to talk to me about the yard work I had not done, I tried to ___ them by telling a joke.

a. require b. devour c. distract

(Continues on next page)

_______ 13. At exactly 6 p.m., the owner of the store went to the sign on the door that said "Open" and ___ it to the other side, which said "Sorry, closed."
a. glanced b. introduced c. reversed

_______ 14. Bad weather can cause a great deal of ___ to a crop of oranges.
a. damage b. opportunity c. excuse

_______ 15. It was a ___ for Greta to stop smoking, but she is proud that she finally did it.
a. respect b. gratitude c. struggle

_______ 16. Although I never buy anything over the phone, there is one telephone salesperson who ___ in calling me at least once a week.
a. persists b. creates c. resists

_______ 17. Are you ___ that you are wearing one black shoe and one brown shoe?
a. modern b. aware c. capable

_______ 18. When the neighbors got together to paint Mrs. Kim's house, she cooked dinner for all of them to show them her ___.
a. failure b. occasion c. gratitude

_______ 19. It makes me angry when my kids leave ___ towels lying on the bathroom floor.
a. comfortable b. damp c. popular

_______ 20. Sandra is a ___ boss. She always knows when a worker is upset, even if the worker acts as if nothing is wrong.
a. previous b. modern c. sensitive

_______ 21. The hungry teenagers ___ a box of crackers and a jar of peanut butter while putting away the groceries.
a. devoured b. introduced c. created

_______ 22. It took Carla a long time to choose new eyeglass frames because there were ___ styles for her to look at.
a. helpless b. numerous c. furious

_______ 23. Most religions teach that people should ___ speaking unkindly of others.
a. reverse b. intend c. avoid

_______ 24. Joseph's ___ to find work in his hometown has made him think about moving to a larger city where there are more jobs.
a. tradition b. occasion c. failure

Score (Number correct × 4) + 4 = _______%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT TWO: Test 2

PART A

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **create**	d. **insulting**	g. **observed**	j. **popular**
b. **excuse**	e. **introduced**	h. **require**	k. **timid**
c. **furious**	f. **loyal**	i. **resist**	l. **wonder**

__________ 1. TV soap operas often end in a way that makes people ___ what is going to happen next.

__________ 2. Believe it or not, you can ___ a very good candy by mixing only three things: peanut butter, honey, and powdered milk.

__________ 3. Because Meg and Gerald are so happy that they met and fell in love, they wrote a thank-you note to the friend who ___ them.

__________ 4. The pizza restaurant on the corner is so ___ that people often have to wait an hour for a table.

__________ 5. Barry had a good ___ for falling asleep in class — he had been up all night with his sick child.

__________ 6. The store owner called police when she ___ two scary-looking men walking around the building and looking in the windows.

__________ 7. Some brave children run right up to a department-store Santa Claus, but others are so ___ that they won't go near him at all.

__________ 8. When parents say ___ things to their children, such as "You're stupid," the youngsters often begin to think poorly of themselves.

__________ 9. My parents taught me to work hard and ___ doing things the easy way.

__________ 10. Even if the new supermarket has low prices, I am going to be ___ to the neighborhood grocery store where I have shopped for years.

__________ 11. I knew that Dad would be upset that I lost his wallet, but he was more than upset. He was ___.

__________ 12. "In order to do this trick," said the magician, "I ___ a brave person from the audience to come up on stage with me."

(Continues on next page)

PART B

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **careless**	d. **distressed**	g. **ignores**	j. **previous**
b. **constant**	e. **glanced**	h. **intend**	k. **respect**
c. **discovered**	f. **helpless**	i. **labor**	l. **tradition**

________________ 13. After their children are grown and leave home, Mr. and Mrs. Siskin ___ to sell their house and move to an apartment.

________________ 14. When I first moved away from home, I felt as ___ as a baby.

________________ 15. Many people lost their ___ for the mayor when they learned he had made up stories about being a war hero.

________________ 16. At first, I only ___ at the couple entering the store. But when I realized they were famous movie actors, I turned around and stared.

________________ 17. The last time I was at the library, I ___ a writer whose books I really like.

________________ 18. My children are so ___ about having to move to another city that they aren't eating or sleeping well.

________________ 19. When the restaurant owners saw the new menus, they were very unhappy. The ___ printer had spelled the name of the restaurant wrong.

________________ 20. The children put many hours of ___ into building their tree house. They often worked from the time they got home from school until it was dark.

________________ 21. The ___ of throwing rice at a wedding is a very old one, going back many hundreds of years.

________________ 22. Mr. and Mrs. Shue called their landlord to complain about the ___ loud music and shouting from their neighbors downstairs.

________________ 23. Most people in my office are bothered by the sounds of heavy traffic outside. But Rhonda ___ the noise and gets her job done.

________________ 24. Last winter was not bad, but the ___ one was the coldest I can remember.

Scores	Part A (Adding a Word) ______%	Part B (Adding a Word) ______%

Number right in each part: 12 = 100%, 11 = 92%, 10 = 83%, 9 = 75%, 8 = 67%; 7 = 58%, 6 = 50%, 5 = 42%; 4 = 33%, 3 = 25%. 2 = 17%, 1 = 8%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT TWO: Test 3

PART A

In the space at the left, write the letter of the choice that correctly completes each sentence. In most cases, the correct answer will have the **same** or **almost the same** meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

___ 1. If you see coming toward you a couple you want to **avoid**, you would probably
a. call out their names. b. walk the other way.
c. walk up to them and tell them who you are.

___ 2. If a three-year-old asks **constant** questions, the questions
a. go on and on and never seem to stop. b. are hard to understand.
c. are about private matters.

___ 3. If you **create** a new way of doing a job at work, you
a. come up with the idea on your own. b. have trouble finding a way to do the job better.
c. are happy that other people found a way to do the job better.

___ 4. If insects do a lot of **damage** to a plant, the plant will
a. grow tall. b. be healthy and strong.
c. be harmed badly.

___ 5. If something happens that makes you feel like a **failure**, you might feel as though
a. nothing works out well for you. b. everything turns out well for you.
c. everyone is on your side.

___ 6. If a friend is **furious** with you, the friend would be
a. really angry with you. b. relaxed with you.
c. fearful of you.

___ 7. If a turtle is **helpless** when it is on its back, that means that it
a. is especially strong. b. is sleepy.
c. can't help itself by turning over.

___ 8. If dinner at a restaurant **includes** dessert, this means that
a. dessert will be a part of the meal. b. dessert will not be a part of the meal.
c. dessert will be the only thing in the meal.

___ 9. An **insulting** joke is one that is
a. nice and funny. b. mean and rude.
c. hard to remember.

___10. If you **intend** to clean the house on Saturday, you
a. forget to clean the house on Saturday. b. plan to clean the house on Saturday.
c. try hard to keep from cleaning the house on Saturday.

___11. If you **reverse** your car, you
a. love your car. b. sell your car.
c. turn your car in the other direction.

(Continues on next page)

____12. Teenagers who **resist** using drugs
a. never heard of drugs.
b. use a lot of drugs.
c. work hard to keep from using drugs.

PART B

In the space at the left, write the letter of the choice that is the **opposite** of the **boldfaced** word.

____13. The opposite of **capable** is
a. not able
b. painful
c. colorful

____14. The opposite of **careless** is
a. difficult
b. easy
c. careful

____15. The opposite of **damp** is
a. ugly
b. cold
c. dry

____16. The opposite of **glance** is
a. repeat slowly
b. look at carefully
c. give back

____17. The opposite of **ignore** is
a. pay attention
b. open slowly
c. clean completely

____18. The opposite of **labor** is
a. truth
b. fault
c. rest

____19. The opposite of **modern** is
a. straight
b. old-fashioned
c. good-looking

____20. The opposite of **observe** is
a. not see
b. not try
c. not hurt

____21. The opposite of **persist** is
a. give up
b. hurry
c. look at

____22. The opposite of **numerous** is
a. few
b. straight
c. small

____23. The opposite of **sociable** is
a. perfect
b. unfriendly
c. sharp

____24. The opposite of **timid** is
a. brave
b. tiny
c. smooth

Scores Part A (Same Meanings) ______% Part B (Opposite Meanings) ______%

Number right in each part: 12 = 100%, 11 = 92%, 10 = 83%, 9 = 75%, 8 = 67%; 7 = 58%, 6 = 50%, 5 = 42%; 4 = 33%, 3 = 25%. 2 = 17%, 1 = 8%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

Unit Three

Chapter 13

amazed
confident
donate
effort
locate
purpose
sincere
uncertain

Chapter 14

disgust
dismiss
guarantee
ideal
inspect
opinion
prevent
resolve

Chapter 15

advice
cautious
defeat
defect
impossible
necessary
permit
provide

Chapter 16

arrange
continue
expert
hollow
panic
personal
regret
suppose

Chapter 17

admit
available
contribute
dull
encourage
experiment
intimate
portion

Chapter 18

compete
contain
depend
effective
envy
gradual
intense
involve

UNIT THREE: Pretest

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **amazed** **a**) surprised **b**) bored **c**) worried

____ 2. **confident** **a**) sorry **b**) honest **c**) sure

____ 3. **donate** **a**) to show **b**) to find **c**) to give

____ 4. **effort** **a**) hard work **b**) sadness **c**) good looks

____ 5. **locate** **a**) to lose **b**) to find **c**) to forget

____ 6. **purpose** **a**) a reason **b**) a problem **c**) a job

____ 7. **sincere** **a**) truthful **b**) not honest **c**) angry

____ 8. **uncertain** **a**) not interested **b**) sure **c**) not sure

____ 9. **disgust** **a**) make happy **b**) make sick **c**) make busy

____ 10. **dismiss** **a**) punish **b**) forget **c**) let leave

____ 11. **guarantee** **a**) a promise to fix something **b**) a wish to go somewhere **c**) a hope to buy something

____ 12. **ideal** **a**) short **b**) very bad **c**) perfect

____ 13. **inspect** **a**) to hide carefully **b**) to look at carefully **c**) to stop

____ 14. **opinion** **a**) a thought **b**) a need **c**) a job

____ 15. **prevent** **a**) to stop ahead of time **b**) to help **c**) to cause

____ 16. **resolve** **a**) to forget **b**) to fail **c**) to decide

____ 17. **advice** **a**) a helpful idea **b**) a friendship **c**) a mistake

____ 18. **cautious** **a**) happy **b**) tired **c**) careful

____ 19. **defeat** **a**) to beat in a contest **b**) to keep **c**) to hide

____ 20. **defect** **a**) a cost **b**) something wrong **c**) the best part

____ 21. **impossible** **a**) usual **b**) not able to happen **c**) safe

____ 22. **necessary** **a**) not wanted **b**) careful **c**) very important

____ 23. **permit** **a**) to understand **b**) to let **c**) to win

____ 24. **provide** **a**) to give **b**) to take away **c**) to show

____ 25. **arrange** **a**) to buy **b**) to mix up **c**) to put in order

____ 26. **continue** **a**) to keep quiet **b**) to keep outside **c**) to keep going

____ 27. **expert** **a**) a person who does not know much about something **b**) a person who knows a lot about something **c**) a person who is afraid of something

____ 28. **hollow** **a**) against the law **b**) out of shape **c**) empty

____ 29. **panic** **a**) great fear **b**) great hunger **c**) great love

____ 30. **personal** **a**) not important **b**) close to one's heart **c**) not expensive

____ 31. **regret** **a**) to feel bad about **b**) to be thankful **c**) to be nervous

____ 32. **suppose** **a**) to remember **b**) to see clearly **c**) to guess

____ 33. **admit** **a**) to hide **b**) to enjoy **c**) to tell the truth

____ 34. **available** **a**) boring **b**) easy to get **c**) expensive

____ 35. **contribute** **a**) to give **b**) to take away **c**) to find

____ 36. **dull** **a**) not interesting **b**) fun **c**) private

____ 37. **encourage** **a**) to stop **b**) to shout at angrily **c**) to give hope to

____ 38. **experiment** **a**) to give **b**) to try something new **c**) to watch

____ 39. **intimate** **a**) boring **b**) private **c**) false

____ 40. **portion** **a**) all of something **b**) nothing **c**) a part of something

____ 41. **compete** **a**) to try to win **b**) to give up **c**) to share

____ 42. **contain** **a**) to dislike **b**) to make **c**) to have inside

____ 43. **depend** **a**) to wait for **b**) to rely on **c**) to turn away from

____ 44. **effective** **a**) late **b**) slow **c**) good

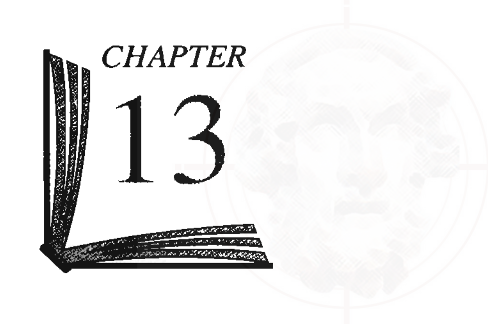
____ 45. **envy** **a**) to look like **b**) to have more than **c**) to want to have the same as

____ 46. **gradual** **a**) happening slowly **b**) becoming smaller **c**) happening quickly

____ 47. **intense** **a**) little **b**) not important **c**) deeply felt

____ 48. **involve** **a**) to keep out **b**) to bring in **c**) to make angry

SCORE: (Number correct ________ × 2) + 4 = ____________ %





amazed	**locate**
confident	**purpose**
donate	**sincere**
effort	**uncertain**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 amazed
/əˈmeɪzd/
– adjective

- The police were **amazed** that no one was hurt in the bad traffic accident.
- The crowd was **amazed** by the runner's speed.

___*Amazed* means   a. surprised   b. bored   c. worried

2 confident
/ˈkɒnfɪdənt/
– adjective

- Even though Shelly said she was full, we were **confident** she would find room for a piece of cake.
- After winning three games in a row, the team felt **confident** about doing well the rest of the season.

___*Confident* means   a. sorry   b. honest   c. sure

3 donate
/dəʊˈneɪt/
– verb

- Instead of throwing out old books, I **donate** them to a library so others can read them.
- Because so many people **donated** money to us when our house burned down, we were able to make a down payment on a new house.

___*Donate* means   a. show   b. find   c. give

4 effort
/ˈefət/
– noun

- It took a lot of **effort** to move the big sofa into the room.
- With great **effort**, the weight lifter raised the barbell above his head.

___*Effort* means   a. hard work   b. sadness   c. good looks

5 locate
/ləʊˈkeɪt/
– verb

- Can you **locate** Alaska on the map?
- No matter how well I hide the candy bars I buy, my son always **locates** them.

___*Locate* means   a. lose   b. find   c. forget

6 purpose
/ˈpɜːpəs/
– noun

- My **purpose** in speaking to the class was to tell everyone about the exciting book I had read.
- What was our **purpose** for buying such an expensive computer? We wanted to get the best possible model.

___*Purpose* means a. reason b. problem c. job

7 sincere
/sɪnˈsɪə(r)/
– adjective

- Because Dave has a warm smile, he seems like a **sincere** young man, but in fact he is not very honest.
- I voted for Cara Sanchez because she seems **sincere** about wanting to help people.

___*Sincere* means a. truthful b. not honest c. angry

8 uncertain
/ˌʌnˈsɜːtən/
– adjective

- The twins look so much alike that I am **uncertain** who is Marco and who is Miguel.
- Verna is **uncertain** whether she should go to college or join the Army.

___*Uncertain* means a. not interested b. sure c. not sure

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________________ Honest; truthful
2. ____________________ To give something in order to help others
3. ____________________ Not sure; in doubt
4. ____________________ Very surprised
5. ____________________ The reason for something; the goal
6. ____________________ Hard work; trying hard
7. ____________________ To find something
8. ____________________ Sure of something; certain

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **amazed**	c. **donate**	e. **locate**	g. **sincere**
b. **confident**	d. **effort**	f. **purpose**	h. **uncertain**

______________ 1. After weeks of practice, Beth was not worried — she felt ___ that she would pass her driver's test.

______________ 2. Mrs. Chen could not ___ her keys. She looked everywhere for them.

______________ 3. You should always ask your doctor to explain the ___ of any medicine you take.

______________ 4. The handwriting in the letter is so hard to read that I am ___ what it says.

______________ 5. Looking for a job takes a lot of ___— it is a job itself.

______________ 6. Each year, thousands of lives are saved by people who ___ their blood.

______________ 7. My teacher was ___ when I got a perfect score on the test because I had never done that well before.

______________ 8. I thought Rita was ___ about being my friend, but now I think she just wanted to meet my good-looking older brother.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **amazed**	c. **donate**	e. **locate**	g. **sincere**
b. **confident**	d. **effort**	f. **purpose**	h. **uncertain**

____
______________ 1–2. Because so many people saw my car being stolen, the police were ___ that they would be able to ___ it soon.

____
______________ 3–4. Everyone is ___ by all the time and ___ the fifth-graders put into their play; they even wrote their own music for it.

____
______________ 5–6. The mayor said, "Let's have a party to celebrate the holiday season." But the real ___ of the party was to get people to ___ money to help pay for his re-election.

____
______________ 7–8. Joe seemed ___ when he said he would meet me at three o'clock. But he often says one thing and does another, so I was ___ that he would show up.

Final Check

A. Ready to Do Well

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **amazed**	b. **confident**	c. **effort**	d. **uncertain**

Feeling very nervous, Michelle walked into her English class on the morning of the final exam. She hated tests, and she was (1)____________________ that she would pass this one. Just as she sat down, she saw her friend Teresa come into the classroom. Michelle waved to Teresa and was (2)____________________ to see that she looked happy and calm. There was even a smile on Teresa's face, and she was humming a song. When Teresa took her seat, Michelle said to her, "You don't look a bit worried! Aren't you scared about the test?"

"No," said Teresa. "I put a lot of (3)____________________ into studying for it."

"Are you sure you will pass?" asked Michelle.

"I think I will," said Teresa. "But even if I don't, I know that I did my best to get ready for it. And that is all I can do."

Michelle had also worked hard to prepare for the test, so Teresa's words made her feel a bit more comfortable°. As she relaxed, and her worries went away, she began to feel more (4)____________________ that she too would do well on the test.

B. Advertising for a Date

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

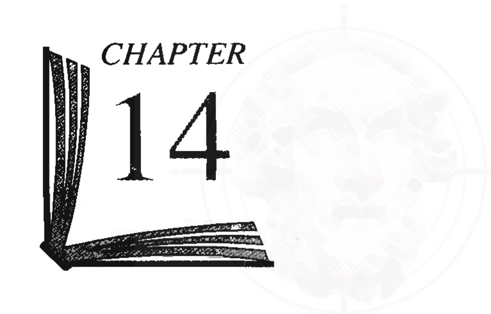
a. **donate**	b. **locate**	c. **purpose**	d. **sincere**

Kevin had broken up with his girlfriend, and he was lonely. All the women he knew were married or had boyfriends, so he had no opportunity° to meet someone new to date. He didn't want to go to bars with the (5)____________________ of trying to meet women. So how, he asked himself, could he (6)____________________ an interesting person to go out with? Finally, he had an idea. He put an ad in the local newspaper. This is how the ad read: "I would like to meet a woman who can be a good friend. Maybe later we will decide whether we like each other enough to be more than friends. I am a (7)____________________ guy. I don't tell lies or play games. Because I like to help others, I (8)____________________ a couple of hours each week to a local soup kitchen, for the homeless and poor. I would like to meet someone who enjoys laughing. She should also be kind, honest, and caring. If that sounds like you, I would like to meet you."

Kevin's ad worked. In a short time, he met several nice women. One of them, Hana, has become his steady girlfriend. Now he likes to tell people, "Hana and I found each other in the want ads."

Scores	Sentence Check 1 _______%	Final Check _______%
	Sentence Check 2 _______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





disgust	**inspect**
dismiss	**opinion**
guarantee	**prevent**
ideal	**resolve**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 disgust
/dɪsˈgʌst/
– verb

- The old cigarettes, sweaty socks, and moldy pizza on the floor of Steve's bedroom **disgust** me.
- Elizabeth likes chicken and beef, but the smell of seafood **disgusts** her.

___ *Disgust* means a. make happy b. sicken c. make busy

2 dismiss
/dɪsˈmɪs/
– verb

- The principal decided to **dismiss** the students early so they could get home before the storm.
- The judge would not **dismiss** the angry neighbors until they shook hands.

___ *Dismiss* means a. punish b. forget c. let leave

3 guarantee
/ˌgærənˈtiː/
– noun

- Greg was happy that the used car he bought came with a six-month **guarantee**. He will not have to pay for any repairs during this time.
- It was just bad luck that my stereo stopped working a day after the **guarantee** ran out.

___ *Guarantee* means a. promise to fix something b. wish to go somewhere c. hope to buy something

4 ideal
/aɪˈdɪəl/
– adjective

- Fall is the **ideal** season because it is neither too hot nor too cold.
- The **ideal** meal should taste good, be healthful, and cost very little.

___ *Ideal* means a. short b. very bad c. best

5 inspect
/ɪnˈspekt/
– verb

- At the factory, workers **inspect** every new car before it is shipped out.
- After the kids clean their room, Mira **inspects** it all over, from the bookshelves to under the beds.

___ *Inspect* means a. hide carefully b. look at carefully c. stop

6 opinion
/ə'pɪnjən/
– noun

- My husband liked the movie we saw last night, but I had a different **opinion**.
- Jamie asked her friends for their **opinion** of her new hair color.

___ *Opinion* means a. thought b. fear c. wish

7 prevent
/prɪ'vent/
– verb

- My sister hid her Halloween candy to **prevent** the rest of us from eating it.
- The high fence and guard dog **prevented** anyone from breaking into the house.

___ *Prevent* means a. stop b. help c. cause

8 resolve
/rɪ'zɒlv/
– verb

- I was glad to hear Dad say that on New Year's Day he may **resolve** to quit smoking.
- Before Tina went away to college, she and her best friends from high school **resolved** to write to each other once a week.

___ *Resolve* means a. forget b. fail c. decide

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________ A promise (by a seller to a buyer) to fix or replace something that breaks
2. ____________ To look at something closely in order to find problems or errors
3. ____________ To let someone leave; to send someone away
4. ____________ What someone thinks or feels about something
5. ____________ To keep someone from doing something; to stop something from happening
6. ____________ To cause someone to have a feeling of sickness or strong dislike
7. ____________ To make a strong decision to do something
8. ____________ Perfect; meeting every need or wish

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **disgusts**	c. **guarantee**	e. **inspected**	g. **prevent**
b. **dismissed**	d. **ideal**	f. **opinion**	h. **resolves**

______________ 1. Ever since her expensive VCR fell apart, Tisha won't buy anything unless a store will give her a ___.

______________ 2. Thanks for asking me how I feel about the plans for the party, but my ___ isn't really important.

______________ 3. The way drunk people sometimes act ___ me. I hate to see people make fools of themselves.

______________ 4. We ___ many apartments before choosing the one we wanted.

______________ 5. Every Monday morning, Nora ___ to make the week better than the one before.

______________ 6. When Jon sprained his ankle at work, his boss ___ him so he could go to the doctor.

______________ 7. Warm, sunny days are ___ for going swimming.

______________ 8. To ___ myself from gaining weight, I exercise every night after dinner.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **disgusted**	c. **guarantee**	e. **inspected**	g. **prevent**
b. **dismissed**	d. **ideal**	f. **opinion**	h. **resolved**

____
______________ 1–2. All the blood in the movie sickened and ___ me. In my ___, the movie would have been better without all the violence.

____
______________ 3–4. To ___ anyone from getting hurt when the fire broke out, Mrs. Brown ___ her workers and told them to go home.

____
______________ 5–6. When the computer broke down just two months after he had bought it, Carlo ___ never again to buy anything if it didn't come with a ___.

____
______________ 7–8. After my boss ___ my work folder, he said I was an ___ worker and gave me a big raise.

Final Check

A. The Good and Bad Sides of Malls

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **dismiss**	b. **guarantees**	c. **opinion**	d. **resolve**

Most people think malls are great. But why do so many people share this (1)____________________? First of all, malls are easy to use. Before malls, people had to go to many small stores to locate° what they needed. Today's shoppers have to go to only one place to find what they want. Another reason people like malls is cost. A department store in a mall is large enough to be able to offer low prices. Malls can also offer the best (2)____________________ in town. For example, if a TV bought in a mall department store breaks down, the store will often fix the TV free of charge, no questions asked.

But not everything about malls is good. Here's why. As malls spread across the country, they put hundreds of small family-owned shops and restaurants out of business. How? When you buy clothes at a mall, you are not spending your money at stores which have been in the area since before the malls were built. The same is true for restaurants. When you buy a taco in the mall food court, that takes business away from the taco restaurant on Main Street in town. Over time, it becomes harder and harder for small businesses to stay open. Their owners may (3)____________________ to fight to stay open. But often they are forced to (4)____________________ all their workers and close their doors forever. Towns that used to have streets filled with shoppers now have empty stores and lost jobs. That's why malls are not as wonderful as they seem.

B. As Good As It Looks?

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

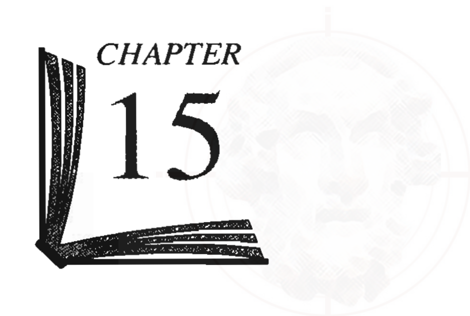
a. **disgust**	b. **ideal**	c. **inspected**	d. **prevents**

Did you ever want to know why the food in TV ads always looks (5)____________________? Did you ever wonder° why it looks so much better on TV than it does in real life? The answer may surprise you. Often the tasty-looking food you see on TV is fake — or at least partly fake. There is no rule that says TV ads must show real food. Advertisers are free to add whatever they want to make what they sell look good. Nothing (6)____________________ an advertiser from adding something strange that would (7)____________________ people if they knew about it.

To make milk seem creamy and white, advertisers add sticky white glue to each glass! The dark steamy coffee in TV ads is no better. In a few ads, it has soap added to it to make it look bubbly and fresh. One company even made its chicken look good and crispy by spraying it with brown paint. The nice roasted color made it look great. But if you (8)____________________ the chicken closely, you would have seen a coat of oily paint all over it. So it's not surprising that the food you make at home never looks as good as the food on TV. Maybe you need to add some paint or glue to your recipes!

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ______%	Final Check ______%
	Sentence Check 2 ______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





advice	**impossible**
cautious	**necessary**
defeat	**permit**
defect	**provide**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 advice
/əd'vaɪs/
– noun

- My mother's **advice** to me whenever I get sick is to stay in bed.
- Friends often give good **advice** when you are trying to make a decision.

___*Advice* means a. helpful idea b. friendship c. mistake

2 cautious
/'kɔːʃəs/
– adjective

- Ever since he stepped on a bee, Paul has been **cautious** about walking in the grass with bare feet.
- You need to be **cautious** when riding a bike on busy roads.

___*Cautious* means a. happy b. tired c. careful

3 defeat
/dɪ'fiːt/
– verb

- If you can **defeat** your fears, you can do anything.
- Our soccer team played so well that we **defeated** the first-place team.

___*Defeat* means a. beat b. keep c. hide

4 defect
/'diːfekt/
– noun

- Martina returned her new jacket to the store because it had a **defect** — the zipper would not close.
- My boss finds **defects** in everyone else's work, but he thinks his own work is perfect.

___*Defect* means a. cost b. problem c. best part

5 impossible
/ɪm'pɒsəbl/
– adjective

- Mira has to work on Saturday, so it is **impossible** for her to go on the camping trip this weekend.
- Until the 1960s, many people thought it would be **impossible** to travel to the moon.

___*Impossible* means a. usual b. not able to happen c. safe

6 **necessary**
/ˈnesəsərɪ/
– adjective

- Before the bank can cash your check, it will be **necessary** for you to show your driver's license.
- You will have to fill out the **necessary** forms before the doctor will see you.

___*Necessary* means a. not wanted b. careful c. needed

7 **permit**
/pəˈmɪt/
– verb

- Most stores don't want customers to bring their pets inside, but they do **permit** people to bring in Seeing-Eye dogs.
- I don't understand why Ralph **permits** his son to speak to him so rudely.

___*Permit* means a. understand b. let c. win

8 **provide**
/prəʊˈvaɪd/
– verb

- Two soup kitchens in the city **provide** free meals to hungry families.
- Before the test, the instructor **provided** a pencil to every student.

___*Provide* means a. give b. take away c. show

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ________________ Not taking chances; careful
2. ________________ A helpful idea about how to do something
3. ________________ A problem or mistake that keeps something from being perfect; a fault
4. ________________ To gain a victory over someone or something; to win in a contest of some kind
5. ________________ To let someone do something
6. ________________ To give something that people need
7. ________________ Very important to something else; needed
8. ________________ Not possible; not able to be done

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **advice**	c. **defeated**	e. **impossible**	g. **permits**
b. **cautious**	d. **defects**	f. **necessary**	h. **provide**

________ 1. The store sells "not quite perfect" clothes that have small ___ you can barely see.

________ 2. When we saw lightning in the sky, we decided to be ___ and go indoors.

________ 3. The basketball star's ___ to students was simple: "Stay in school, work hard, and stay off drugs!"

________ 4. To bake a tall cake, several eggs are ___.

________ 5. I know who is bringing hot dogs to the picnic, but who will ___ the soda?

________ 6. If you water plants only once in a while, it will be ___ for them to grow healthy and strong.

________ 7. We ___ the ants in our kitchen with a broom and a can of bug spray.

________ 8. My boss ___ workers to wear jeans on Fridays.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **advice**	c. **defeat**	e. **impossible**	g. **permitted**
b. **cautious**	d. **defect**	f. **necessary**	h. **provide**

____
________ 1–2. The best piece of ___ my father gave me was this: "Don't be afraid to try." He made me believe that if I worked hard enough, no problem could ___ me.

____
________ 3–4. Because Katie was born with a ___ in her heart, it was ___ for her to have an operation when she was just two days old.

____
________ 5–6. The landlord told me it was ___ for me to keep a pet, so why has he ___ my neighbors to have two dogs and a cat?

____
________ 7–8. ___ parents will ___ a baby sitter with the phone numbers of the police and fire stations.

Final Check

A. A Belief in Flying

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **advice**	b. **defeated**	c. **impossible**	d. **permit**

What do you think life would be like without the telephone? Without the radio, TV, cars, or airplanes? If the people who came up with these wonderful inventions had listened to the (1)______________________ they were given, they would have given up. Instead, they were able to remain motivated° to reach their goals. For instance, many people told the Wright brothers, who invented the airplane, that flying was (2)______________________. "We would have been born with wings if we were meant to fly!" people said. Sometimes the Wright brothers thought these people were right. After all, there were many times that their "flying machines" crashed to the ground. But these setbacks never (3)______________________ the Wright brothers. They would not (4)______________________ themselves to give up. Finally, in 1903, they invented a flying machine that really worked. Every airplane in the sky today is there because the Wright brothers believed in what they were doing.

B. She Tries before She Buys

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **cautious**	b. **defect**	c. **necessary**	d. **provide**

Mr. Henderson works in the vegetable section of the Quick-Mart store. The other day, he saw a customer pick up a tomato and take a big bite of it.

"Wait a minute!" Mr. Henderson said. "What do you think you're doing? You can't eat something you haven't paid for."

The woman looked at him in surprise. "I'm just a (5)______________________ shopper," she explained. "I don't buy anything until I inspect° it to be sure that it's really good. And these tomatoes aren't very good."

"What's wrong with them?" asked Mr. Henderson.

"Well, they look good on the outside," said the woman. "But they have a (6)______________________ inside. They are hard and sour, not juicy and sweet. Biting into that one was like eating a red tennis ball."

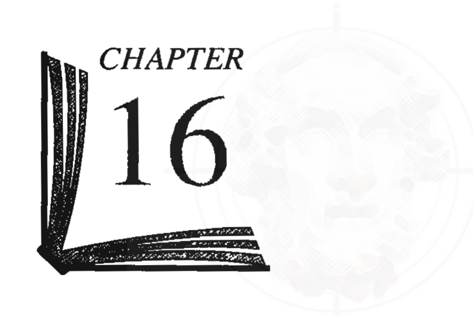
"I'm sorry you don't like the tomatoes," said Mr. Henderson. "But it is still (7)______________________ for you to pay for the tomato you ate."

"Oh, all right," said the woman. "Here's fifty cents. But you really should (8)______________________ customers with a chance to taste before we buy. Otherwise, how do we know what we are getting?"

Scores	Sentence Check 1	________%	Final Check	________%
	Sentence Check 2	________%		

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.




CHAPTER 16

arrange	**panic**
continue	**personal**
expert	**regret**
hollow	**suppose**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 arrange /ə'reɪndʒ/ – verb

- The first thing Chen did in his new apartment was **arrange** his furniture so that each piece was exactly where he wanted it.
- I **arranged** all the books on the shelf in alphabetical order.

___*Arrange* means a. buy b. mix up c. put in order

2 continue /kən'tɪnjuː/ – verb

- The weather report says that heavy rain will **continue** for several days and cause flooding.
- My neighbors **continued** playing their radio loudly, even though I asked them to turn it down.

___*Continue* means a. keep quiet b. keep outside c. keep going

3 expert /'ekspɜːt/ – noun

- My little brother is an **expert** on dinosaurs. He knows all their names, what they looked like, what they ate, and where they lived.
- Aunt Sonia likes sweets so much she calls herself a dessert **expert**.

___*Expert* means a. someone who does not know much about something b. someone who knows a lot about something c. someone who is afraid of something

4 hollow /'hɒləʊ/ – adjective

- The pipe used to be **hollow**, but now it is filled with earth and tree roots.
- The bank robbers hid the money in a **hollow** tree.

___*Hollow* means a. against the law b. out of shape c. empty

5 panic /'pænɪk/ – noun

- Gary felt **panic** when he saw the large, hairy spider.
- As the fire moved closer and closer to our block, we tried to fight the feeling of **panic** inside us.

___*Panic* means a. great fear b. great hunger c. great love

6 personal
/ˈpɜːsənəl/
– adjective

- For the last five years, Tara has kept a diary so she can write down her **personal** thoughts and feelings.
- With close friends, you can talk about **personal** subjects, such as problems you're having at home or on the job.

___*Personal* means a. not important b. close to one's heart c. not expensive

7 regret
/rɪˈgret/
– verb

- Our neighbors thought painting their house purple would be fun, but now they **regret** that they did it.
- Bill **regrets** yelling at his little brother and making him cry.

___*Regret* means a. feel bad about b. be thankful c. be nervous

8 suppose
/səˈpəuz/
– verb

- I **suppose** I will go to the movies tonight, but I won't decide until later.
- We had **supposed** that my brother would bring his new girlfriend home for Thanksgiving, but he visited her family instead.

___*Suppose* means a. remember b. see clearly c. think

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________________ Having to do with a person's life and feelings; private
2. ____________________ A sudden feeling of great fear
3. ____________________ Being empty inside
4. ____________________ Someone who knows a lot about a subject
5. ____________________ To be sorry; to feel bad about something that happened
6. ____________________ To put something in order
7. ____________________ To keep on doing something; to not stop
8. ____________________ To guess that something is true or will happen

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **arranged**	c. **expert**	e. **panic**	g. **regretted**
b. **continue**	d. **hollow**	f. **personal**	h. **supposed**

________ 1. When water started leaking into the house, Glenda ___ that she had not gotten the roof fixed.

________ 2. Sometimes children ask adults ___ questions like "What scares you?" and "Do you ever cry?"

________ 3. Raccoons like to build their homes inside ___ places.

________ 4. Shaking and feeling a great deal of ___, the man dialed 911 as quickly as he could.

________ 5. Melissa is an ___ at math, but she does not know much about history.

________ 6. The way the chef ___ the food on the plate made the meal look better than it tasted.

________ 7. The man at the gas station told us to ___ driving on Route 95 until the very end.

________ 8. I ___ you would be hungry after the test, so I bought sandwiches and soft drinks.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **arrange**	c. **expert**	e. **panic**	g. **regrets**
b. **continue**	d. **hollow**	f. **personal**	h. **suppose**

________ ________ 1–2. I don't know how to ___ flowers very well, but my sister, who works in a flower shop, is an ___ at it.

________ ________ 3–4. Rodney acts as though he isn't afraid of anything. But his closest friends know one of his most ___ secrets. Rodney feels great ___ when he sees a mouse.

________ ________ 5–6. Ved ___ putting white carpet in his living room. Now the room looks so big that it seems almost ___.

________ ________ 7–8. Our teacher gave us very little homework this week, but I ___ that in the weeks ahead, the class will not ___ to be so easy.

Final Check

A. Play Now, Pay Later

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **arranged**	b. **continued**	c. **hollow**	d. **suppose**

Did you ever hear the story of the ants and the grasshopper? It goes like this. During the summer, the ants worked hard to prepare° for the winter. From sunup to sundown, they hid pieces of food in (1)____________________ spaces off a main underground tunnel. For weeks, the ants (2)____________________ to work hard. And what did the grasshopper do during this time? He played. He sang and danced and had a fine time. When the ants warned him that winter was coming, he just laughed and said, "I (3)____________________ it will, but no one knows for sure. Anyway, there will always be plenty of food to eat. You'll see." But, of course, winter did come. The ants went into their tunnels and lived off the food that they had carefully (4)____________________ there in neat piles. Soon the grasshopper knocked at their door. "I'm hungry!" he said. "Will you share your food with me?" The ants shook their heads. "Now maybe you are sorry about the way you spent the summer," they said. They shut the door on the grasshopper and left him alone and hungry in the snow.

B. A Man of Many Faces

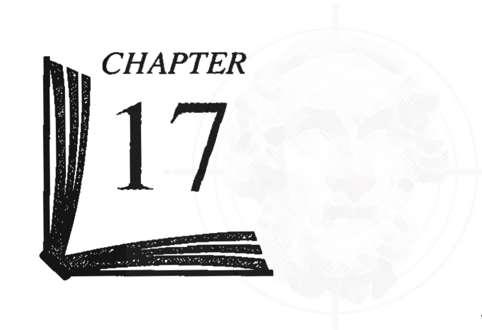
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **expert**	b. **panic**	c. **personal**	d. **regret**

If you ever have the chance, see the movie *The Great Imposter*. The movie tells the story of Ferdinand Demara, Jr., a very interesting man. Demara did not have much education. But he was very smart. When he wanted to learn about something, he read everything that he could find on the subject. In that way, he became an (5)____________________ on many subjects. Many of the people who met Demara believed that he was a college teacher because he knew so much. In fact, Demara started acting as if he were a college professor and more. During his life, Demara held jobs as a doctor, prison warden, chef, priest, and lawyer. He was so good at all these jobs that nobody suspected° he was not the real thing. Sometimes someone would ask Demara a question like "How does it feel to be a doctor?" or "What made you become a prison warden?" Such (6)____________________ questions made Demara feel nervous that someone might learn his secret. Many times, when he thought he might be caught, he felt so much fear and (7)____________________ that he packed his belongings and moved somewhere else. Finally, he was caught and served time in jail. But even then, he did not (8)____________________ that he had told all those lies in the past.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 _______%	Final Check _______%
	Sentence Check 2 _______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





admit	**encourage**
available	**experiment**
contribute	**intimate**
dull	**portion**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 admit
/əd'mɪt/
– verb

- People charged with a crime will sometimes **admit** their guilt. They hope that by saying, "Yes, I did it," they will receive a lighter sentence.
- When I found crumbs in her bedroom, my daughter **admitted** that she ate the last of the chocolate cake.

___*Admit* means a. hide b. enjoy c. honestly tell

2 available
/ə'veɪləbl/
– adjective

- At one time, jeans came only in blue and were called "blue jeans." Now they are **available** in dozens of colors.
- Asian foods are **available** at many stores in my neighborhood, but they are not sold in my sister's neighborhood.

___*Available* means a. boring b. easy to get c. expensive

3 contribute
/kən'trɪbjuːt/
– verb

- Each winter, people are asked to **contribute** food and clothing to help the city's homeless.
- My history class is interesting because every student **contributes** his or her ideas.

___*Contribute* means a. give b. take away c. find

4 dull
/dʌl/
– adjective

- Darren says that his work is **dull** because he does the same simple things day after day.
- The movie was so **dull** that half the audience fell asleep and the rest went home early.

___*Dull* means a. not interesting b. fun c. private

5 encourage
/ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/
– verb

- To **encourage** a team to do better, a coach should not yell at the players all the time.
- My parents **encouraged** me to aim high and hope for the best.

___*Encourage* means a. stop b. shout at angrily c. give hope to

6 experiment
/ɪksˈperɪment/
– verb

- I like to **experiment** with new recipes, but sometimes I end up feeding the results to my dog.
- Last year, the teacher **experimented** with a completely different way to teach English to children from other countries.

___*Experiment* means a. give b. try something new c. watch

7 intimate
/ˈɪntɪmət/
– adjective

- Most of us tell **intimate** things about ourselves only to those people we know well and trust completely.
- In a diary, people may write about thoughts they feel are too **intimate** to tell anyone.

___*Intimate* means a. boring b. private c. false

8 portion
/ˈpɔːʃən/
– noun

- Every week, Lawrence puts a **portion** of his paycheck into the bank.
- Father was busy at the Thanksgiving table, cutting **portions** of the turkey for everyone.

___*Portion* means a. all b. nothing c. part

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________________ To tell the truth about something; to confess
2. ____________________ Boring
3. ____________________ To give something, such as money, help, or ideas
4. ____________________ A small part of something larger
5. ____________________ To make others feel they can do well; to help others get the courage to do something
6. ____________________ To try something new and different
7. ____________________ Easy to get, buy, or find; ready for use
8. ____________________ Having to do with inner feelings; private

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **admits**	c. **contributed**	e. **encouraged**	g. **intimate**
b. **available**	d. **dull**	f. **experimented**	h. **portions**

________________ 1. Everyone in our family ___ something to the block fair. Dad baked pies, Mom brought tablecloths, and I played the guitar.

________________ 2. To lose weight, you don't have to give up all the foods you love. Just eat smaller ___ of them.

________________ 3. I went to the video store to see if any good horror movies were ___.

________________ 4. I ___ with driving a different route to work this morning to see if it would be faster.

________________ 5. Because of problems at home, Lorena planned to drop out of school. But her teachers ___ her to keep going and not give up.

________________ 6. Jake likes to dance, but he ___ that he is not very good at it.

________________ 7. Hakim thought the book would be ___. However, it was so exciting that he stayed up all night reading it.

________________ 8. Carlos is too shy to share his ___ thoughts with anyone.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **admit**	c. **contributed**	e. **encouraging**	g. **intimate**
b. **available**	d. **dull**	f. **experimenting**	h. **portions**

________________ 1–2. Children from unhappy homes often keep ___ secrets about family life
________________ to themselves. Caring adults can make the children feel better by ___ them to talk about what is happening at home.

________________ 3–4. If things get ___ at a party, try ___ with this idea for waking everyone
________________ up: Ask people to talk about their earliest memories.

________________ 5–6. I don't like to ___ it, but I have never ___ anything to the toy drive that
________________ my neighborhood runs every year.

________________ 7–8. Here's what to do when you have two hungry kids and only one candy
________________ bar ___. Have one child cut the candy bar into two ___ and have the second child choose which piece he or she wants.

Final Check

A. Soaps Are for Me!

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **admit**	b. **dull**	c. **encourage**	d. **intimate**

People often laugh at me for watching TV soap operas. Let them laugh. I like the "soaps" for three reasons. First, sometimes my own life seems (1)__________________, with the same boring jobs to do every day at home and at work. But the soaps are always exciting. People hop from one romance to the next, get into all kinds of difficulty, and come down with strange illnesses. Second, the soaps let me be nosy without getting into trouble. I (2)__________________ it. To be truthful, I like hearing about the private lives and inner thoughts of people on the soaps. But I would never want my own friends or family to tell me such (3)__________________ things. How could I look them in the face again? The soaps are a safe way to get all the interesting "inside dirt" on people. Third, the soaps (4)______________________ me to deal with my own problems. Compared with what goes on in a soap opera, my own troubles seem minor°. What if I did have a little fight with my husband? At least I don't have two lovers and their jealous wives to worry about, my brother hasn't been missing for ten years (he lives downstairs), and I haven't got some terrible disease.

B. Keeping the Customer Happy

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **available**	b. **contributed**	c. **experiment**	d. **portions**

I'm a waiter in a restaurant. It's not a fancy place, but it's nice. Every so often, we run out of desserts that are on the menu. A customer orders apple pie, and I have to say, "Sorry, we're out of it." The customers don't like that, and sometimes they even get mad at me. So I went to the boss and (5)______________________ an idea. Here's what I said: "If we're out of a dessert, why not offer the customer something that is (6)______________________ — but serve it at half price?"

The boss started to laugh. "We would lose too much money!"

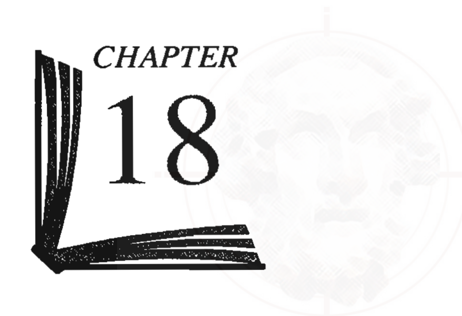
"No, we won't," I said. "Getting paid half for a few (7)______________________ of apple pie or chocolate pudding a couple of times a week won't cost us much. And with each serving, we make a customer happy, and a happy customer is a loyal° customer who will come back over and over again."

"All right," my boss said. "Let's (8)____________________. Let's try your idea for a month and see how it works."

So that's what we're doing. Now, instead of just saying, "Sorry, we're all out," I tell the customer, "We're all out of strawberry ice cream today, but we do have vanilla fudge. And to show you how sorry we are, we're serving that at half price."

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ______%	Final Check ______%
	Sentence Check 2 ______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





compete	**envy**
contain	**gradual**
depend	**intense**
effective	**involve**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 compete
/kəm'pi:t/
– verb

- When Kathy and I **compete** at checkers, she always wins.
- The two brothers **compete** at everything, even to see who can finish his dinner first.

___*Compete* means a. try to win b. give up c. share

2 contain
/kən'teɪn/
– verb

- These boxes **contain** colorful shells that I found at the seashore.
- The bowl in the back of my refrigerator **contains** vegetables that are several months old.

___*Contain* means a. dislike b. make c. have inside

3 depend
/dɪ'pend/
– verb

- When life gets difficult, it helps if you can **depend** on friends to cheer you up.
- Leon **depends** on his neighbor to watch his sons while he is at work.

___*Depend on* means a. wait for b. rely on c. turn away from

4 effective
/ɪ'fektɪv/
– adjective

- This medicine is so **effective** that I haven't coughed once since I took it.
- Exercise is an **effective** way to improve health and get more energy.

___*Effective* means a. late b. slow c. good

5 envy
/'envɪ/
– verb

- Many people **envy** movie stars because they are so rich and famous, but famous people often lead sad lives.
- Children often **envy** grownups because adults can stay up as late as they like.

___*Envy* means a. look like b. have more than c. wish to have the same as

6 gradual
/ˈgrædʒʊəl/
– adjective

- Although we might not see it from one day to the next, there is a **gradual** change as spring turns into summer.
- Over the months, we enjoyed watching Tiger's **gradual** growth from tiny kitten to adult cat.

___*Gradual* means a. happening slowly b. becoming smaller c. happening quickly

7 intense
/ɪnˈtens/
– adjective

- The birth of a healthy baby boy brought Elise and Jorge **intense** happiness.
- Many people felt **intense** sadness when Princess Diana was killed.

___*Intense* means a. little b. not important c. deep

8 involve
/ɪnˈvɒlv/
– verb

- The teachers work hard to **involve** every student in the school play, either as an actor or as a singer.
- I found it helpful to **involve** my parents when I was trying to decide which apartment to rent.

___*Involve* means a. keep out b. bring in c. make angry

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ________________ Happening little by little
2. ________________ Going as planned or wished; working well
3. ________________ To try hard to win over others; to try to outdo others
4. ________________ Deeply felt
5. ________________ To hold inside
6. ________________ To wish to have what someone else has
7. ________________ To make someone or something a part of
8. ________________ To have faith in someone or something; to rely

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **competes**	c. **depend**	e. **envies**	g. **intense**
b. **contains**	d. **effective**	f. **gradual**	h. **involved**

________ 1. The sun makes such a ___ trip through the sky each day that we never really see it moving.

________ 2. I feel sorry for whoever is playing tennis with Sarah. Whenever Sarah ___, she usually wins.

________ 3. Because they wanted to find ways to end the fighting, the two warring countries ___ many nations in the peace process.

________ 4. I ___ on my dog to wake me every morning in time for work.

________ 5. Shopping for clothes in secondhand stores is an ___ way to save money.

________ 6. Because he works outside in the summer heat, Scott ___ people who work in air-conditioned offices.

________ 7. When the runner lost the race, her face showed ___ disappointment.

________ 8. My jewelry box ___ paper clips, pencils, nail files, and chewing gum. Oh, yes, the box has some jewelry in it, too.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **competed**	c. **depend**	e. **envy**	g. **intense**
b. **contained**	d. **effective**	f. **gradual**	h. **involve**

____
________ 1–2. When I was a kid, I used to ___ my friend because his lunch box always ___ a candy bar, while mine had only a piece of fruit.

____
________ 3–4. It turned out to be a good idea to ___ my three-year-old daughter in feeding our cat. She gets ___ joy from having such a grown-up job.

____
________ 5–6. Omar used to lose when he ___ at chess, but then he found a more ___ way to play. Now he wins almost every game.

____
________ 7–8. When children are very young, they ___ on adults for everything, but as they grow, with the ___ passing of time, kids slowly learn to do things for themselves.

Final Check

A. A Fake "Cure"

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **contained**	b. **depended**	c. **effective**	d. **involve**

Have you ever heard anybody say, "That's just snake oil"? The term "snake oil" means "fake medicine." People claim° that it can cure an illness, but it doesn't really do anything. The term comes from the 1800s, when "medicine shows" would travel from town to town, selling homemade "cures." People believed in the medicine because the seller would often (1)________________ several sick people in the show. They would be called out of the audience and "cured" after taking a big drink of the medicine. Of course, the "sick" people weren't really sick. They were in good health and worked for the medicine show.

These so-called medicines were said to be (2)________________ for everything from baldness to cancer. However, the "medicine" bottles really (3)________________ useless liquids, anything from cactus juice to vinegar to, yes, snake oil. Because most people lived too far from town to see a real doctor, they bought many bottles of this fake medicine. They (4)________________ on it to keep their families healthy. By the time they found out that the medicine didn't work, the people running the medicine show would be many miles away — cheating the next group of townspeople.

B. The Jobs Everyone Hates

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **compete**	b. **envy**	c. **gradual**	d. **intense**

Most people don't like to do housework very much. They (5)________________ those who have the money to hire someone else to do the work. Which housework jobs do people hate most? Nearly 1,400 people were asked that question. Many said they did not like dusting or doing the laundry. But the largest number of people said their most (6)________________ dislike was for washing the dishes and cleaning the bathroom. These two kinds of housework easily won the "prizes" for the worst jobs. Nothing else could (7)________________ with them. Many people also said that they used to like to cook. But as the years went by, a (8) ________________ change took place. People got more and more tired of preparing° meals. For them, the kitchen became a place to stay out of. Maybe that's the reason fast-food restaurants do such good business.

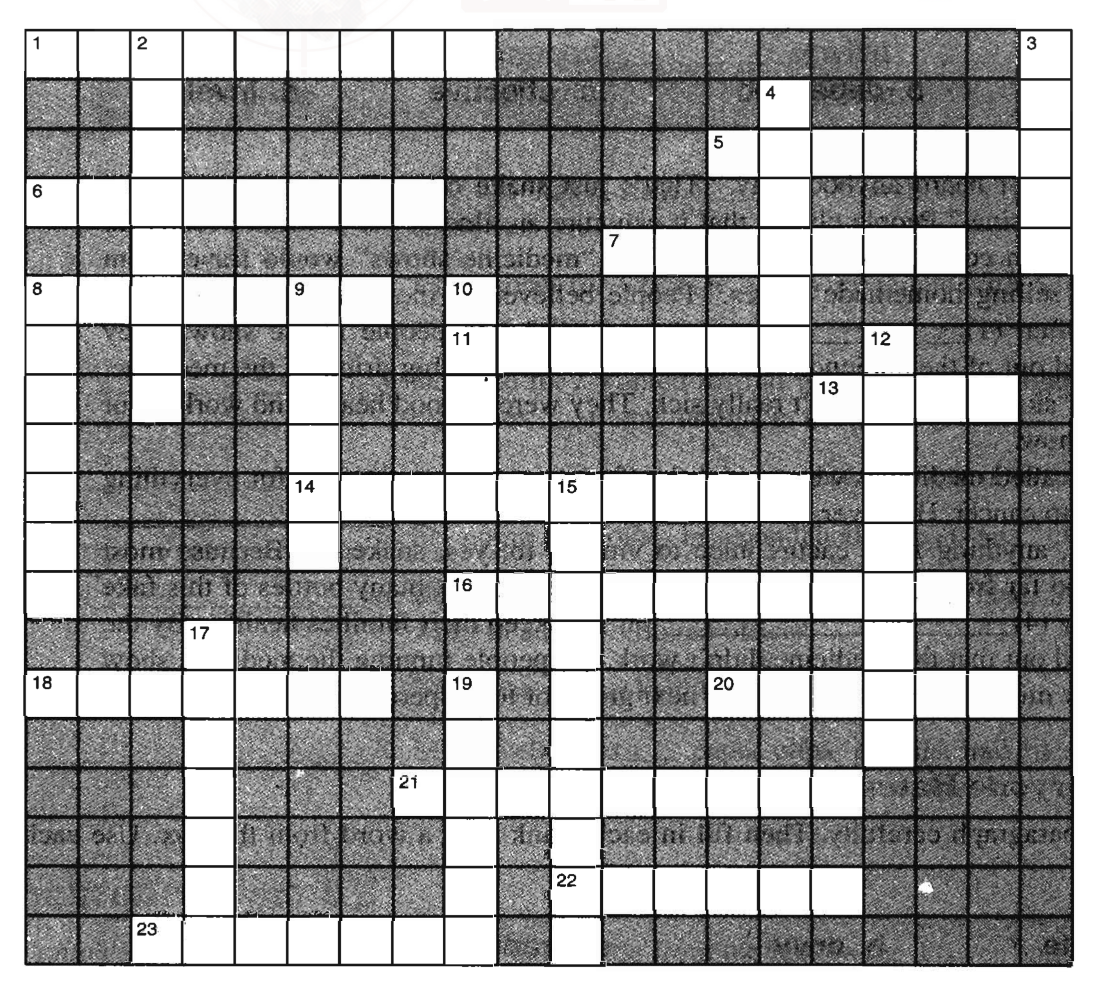
Scores	Sentence Check 1	______%	Final Check	______%
	Sentence Check 2	______%		

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT THREE: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-four words from Unit Three. Using the meanings at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.



admit
advice
available
cautious
contribute
defeat
defect
disgust
dismiss
dull
experiment
guarantee
ideal
impossible
inspect
intimate
involve
locate
necessary
opinion
permit
prevent
provide
resolve

ACROSS

1. Very important to something else; needed
5. To make a strong decision to do something
6. Having to do with inner feelings; private
7. To let someone leave; to send away
8. To give something that people need
11. To cause someone to have a feeling of sickness or strong dislike
13. Boring
14. To give something, such as *money, help, or ideas*
16. To try something new and different
18. To look at something closely in order to find problems or errors
20. To gain a victory over someone or something
21. Easy to get, buy, or find; ready for use
22. To find something
23. To make someone or something a part of

DOWN

2. Not taking chances; careful
3. Perfect; meeting every need or wish
4. To let someone do something
8. To keep someone from doing something
9. A problem or mistake that keeps something from being perfect
10. To tell the truth about something; to confess
12. A promise (by a seller to a buyer) to fix or replace something that breaks
15. Not able to be done
17. What someone thinks or feels about something
19. A helpful idea about how to do something

UNIT THREE: Test 1

On the answer line at the left, write the word that best completes each item.

______________ 1. Carrie did not call a plumber when the pipes in her basement froze. She was ___ she could fix the problem herself.

a. intense b. confident c. personal

______________ 2. Because she thinks it is ___ to do the same kind of exercise every day, Shannon sometimes runs, sometimes swims, and sometimes rides her bike.

a. amazed b. gradual c. dull

______________ 3. Although penguins are birds, it is ___ for them to fly. Their bodies are too large and their wings are too little.

a. ideal b. gradual c. impossible

______________ 4. I always go to Marie's Hair Salon because Marie is an ___ in cutting curly hair like mine.

a. expert b. effort c. advice

______________ 5. When the ice on the pond gets to be six inches deep, the owner ___ people to ice skate there.

a. experiments b. contains c. permits

______________ 6. You can buy frozen strawberries anytime, but fresh ones are ___ for only a few months in the summer.

a. available b. hollow c. necessary

______________ 7. Because John is my closest friend, I can talk to him about the ___ parts of my life.

a. effective b. ideal c. intimate

______________ 8. Since the new baby down the street is all dressed in pink, I ___ that the baby is a girl.

a. envy b. suppose c. dismiss

______________ 9. Peter ate so many ___ of the cherry pie that there was little left for the rest of the family.

a. efforts b. purposes c. portions

______________ 10. The children put their money together to buy their mother a birthday present. Even the four-year-old ___ a nickel.

a. continued b. contributed c. contained

______________ 11. Lori had to ___ that she was the one who had broken the arm of her grandfather's favorite chair.

a. envy b. admit c. locate

______________ 12. The weather report says there will be a ___ warming this week, with the temperature slowly rising from the 40s into the 60s.

a. sincere b. intimate c. gradual

(Continues on next page)

______ 13. There used to be only one long-distance telephone company, but now companies like MCI, Sprint, and AT&T all ___ to get people's business.

a. disgust b. contain c. compete

______ 14. Even though it will be hard, Karen has ___ to put some money from each of her paychecks into a savings account.

a. contained b. involved c. resolved

______ 15. Because I have no car, I have to ___ on a neighbor for a ride to work.

a. prevent b. inspect c. depend

______ 16. The teachers ___ the classes at different times for lunch. The first-graders go out at 12 o'clock, the second-graders at 12:30, and so on.

a. encourage b. locate c. dismiss

______ 17. To make a toy drum, you can use anything ___ that has a lid, such as an empty oatmeal box.

a. hollow b. intense c. uncertain

______ 18. Peeling apples, rolling out a crust, and cleaning up afterward is a lot of ___, but the taste of apple pie is worth all the work.

a. effort b. guarantee c. advice

______ 19. Hiram taped sheets of plastic over his windows to ___ cold air from coming into the house.

a. prevent b. donate c. disgust

______ 20. When Mrs. Ricardo visited her grandson, she was ___ to see that he had grown five inches in just six months.

a. amazed b. cautious c. intimate

______ 21. I ___ my brother's singing voice. He sings like a bird, while I sound like a frog.

a. resolve b. suppose c. envy

______ 22. It is my ___ that my husband makes the world's best chocolate cake.

a. purpose b. panic c. opinion

______ 23. The apartment we looked at today seems ___ It is just the right size, it is neat and clean, and the rent is not too high.

a. cautious b. ideal c. personal

______ 24. The lost man stared at the city map for a long time, trying to ___ Park Avenue.

a. locate b. dismiss c. involve

Score (Number correct × 4) + 4 = ______%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT THREE: Test 2

PART A

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **advice**	d. **defeated**	g. **encourages**	j. **necessary**
b. **contain**	e. **disgust**	h. **inspect**	k. **panic**
c. **continues**	f. **donate**	i. **intense**	l. **regret**

________________ 1. Instead of letting old clothes hang in the closet, ___ them to a homeless shelter so they can be used by others.

________________ 2. If you ___ buying that purple and gold dress, you should return it to the store.

________________ 3. Even if you are unhappy with your job, my ___ is not to quit until you have another one.

________________ 4. We will go to the shore this weekend if the sunny weather ___ that long.

________________ 5. Please don't ___ under my bed. I don't want you to see the balls of dust there.

________________ 6. When the doctor told Mr. and Mrs. Rojas that their son was going to live, they smiled with ___ happiness.

________________ 7. Balloons float upward because they ___ a gas that is lighter than air.

________________ 8. Since I did not see the end of the movie, I do not know if the humans ___ the aliens, or if the aliens took over the Earth.

________________ 9. Before you paint the living room, it will be ___ to take the old wallpaper off the walls.

________________ 10. Mrs. Evans ___ her students by telling them what they are good at, not by yelling at them for their mistakes.

________________ 11. Professional athletes ___ many people by getting so much money and then complaining about their jobs.

________________ 12. As soon as an airplane leaves the ground, some people feel a great deal of ___ and are not able to relax until the plane lands safely.

(Continues on next page)

PART B

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **arranged**	d. **effective**	g. **involves**	j. **purpose**
b. **cautious**	e. **experiment**	h. **personal**	k. **sincere**
c. **defect**	f. **guarantee**	i. **provide**	l. **uncertain**

________ 13. One ___ of most tests is to help students see how much they know about a subject.

________ 14. When you buy a CD from that store, you get a ___ that the CD will be replaced if anything ever goes wrong with it.

________ 15. There are lots of things I like about Rick, but he has one big ___. He believes he is right about everything.

________ 16. Apple trees ___ fruit to eat as well as much-needed shade on hot, sunny days.

________ 17. The little girl ___ her crayons in two piles — one with the colors she liked, the other with the colors she did not like.

________ 18. I teach my children to be ___ about petting strange dogs, even if the dogs seem friendly.

________ 19. When Kareem makes soup, he likes to ___ by adding different herbs and spices.

________ 20. I like the people I work with, but I don't talk to them about ___ things such as problems in my marriage.

________ 21. Paula wants to surprise her father with a nice gift for his birthday, but she is ___ about what he would like.

________ 22. To prove that he is ___ about quitting smoking, James promises to pay each of his children ten dollars if he ever has another cigarette.

________ 23. The concert at school tonight ___ students from the fourth and fifth grades, but not from the sixth and seventh.

________ 24. Borrowing money from friends and not returning it is an ___ way to lose their friendship.

Scores Part A (Adding a Word) ______%	Part B (Adding a Word) ______%

Number right in each part: 12 = 100%, 11 = 92%, 10 = 83%, 9 = 75%, 8 = 67%; 7 = 58%, 6 = 50%, 5 = 42%; 4 = 33%, 3 = 25%. 2 = 17%, 1 = 8%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT THREE: Test 3

PART A

In the space at the left, write the letter of the choice that correctly completes each sentence. In most cases, the correct answer will have the **same** or **almost the same** meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

___ 1. If you are **amazed** at the low price of an apartment, you
a. are surprised at how little it costs.
b. are worried about what it costs.
c. are not sure what it costs.

___ 2. A **confident** person is often heard saying things like,
a. "This is boring."
b. "I doubt that I can do this."
c. "I am sure that I can do this."

___ 3. If the Eagles **defeat** the Cowboys in a football game, the Eagles
a. beat the Cowboys.
b. never play the Cowboys.
c. lose to the Cowboys.

___ 4. If a smell **disgusts** you, then it
a. pleases you.
b. surprises you.
c. makes you feel sick.

___ 5. A job that takes **effort** is one that
a. pays well.
b. is hard to do.
c. is very easy.

___ 6. If you talk about **intimate** matters with your coworkers, then you talk with them about
a. your private life.
b. helpful ideas.
c. things that are perfect.

___ 7. A **portion** of pie is
a. no pie at all.
b. the whole pie.
c. a piece of pie.

___ 8. If you **provide** friends with a place to sleep, you
a. ask them for a place to sleep.
b. don't let them stay with you.
c. give them a place to sleep.

___ 9. If you have a **purpose** for talking to your neighbors, you have
a. no special reason for talking to them.
b. a clear reason for talking to them.
c. a dislike for talking to them.

___10. If you did something that you now **regret**, you feel
a. sorry about what happened.
b. bored with what happened.
c. good about what happened.

___11. If you **resolve** to get more exercise, you
a. do not need to get more exercise.
b. do not want to get more exercise.
c. decide that you are really going to exercise more often.

(Continues on next page)

___12. If you **suppose** that a friend dyes her hair, it means that you
a. wish that she wouldn't color it. b. believe that she probably colors it.
c. know for sure that she colors it.

PART B

In the space at the left, write the letter of the choice that is the **opposite** of the **boldfaced** word.

___13. The opposite of **cautious** is
a. not easy b. not cold c. not careful

___14. The opposite of **continue** is
a. stop b. shout c. push

___15. The opposite of **effective** is
a. not working well b. not looking c. not hearing

___16. The opposite of **gradual** is
a. very sad b. very busy c. all at once

___17. The opposite of **hollow** is
a. not scary b. not empty c. not funny

___18. The opposite of **impossible** is
a. able to repeat b. able to see c. able to happen

___19. The opposite of **locate** is
a. not speak b. not find c. not wish

___20. The opposite of **necessary** is
a. not needed b. not honest c. not strong

___21. The opposite of **panic** is
a. calmness b. doubt c. hope

___22. The opposite of **permit** is
a. not care b. not let c. not see

___23. The opposite of **sincere** is
a. not weak b. not strong c. not truthful

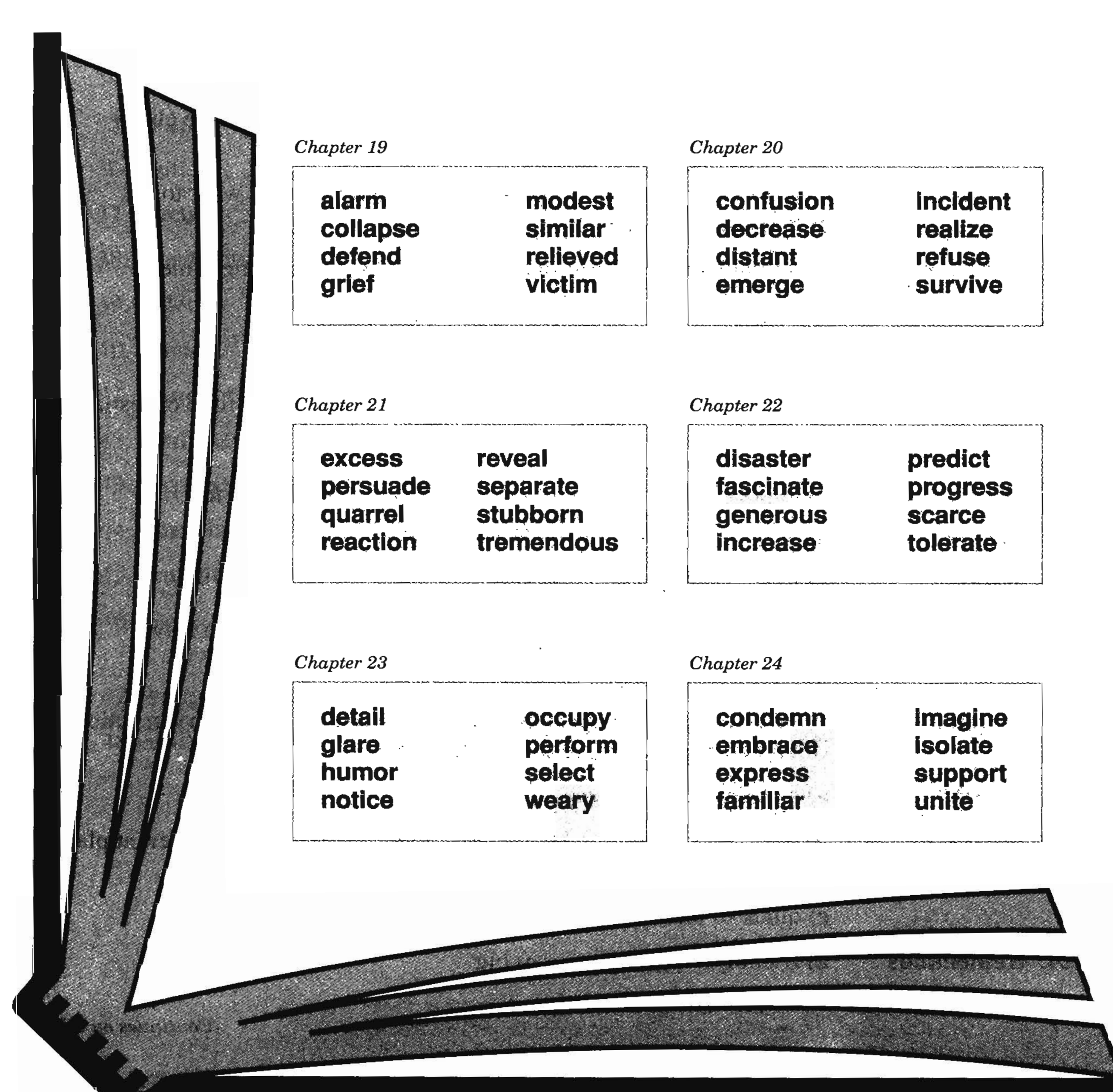
___24. The opposite of **uncertain** is
a. sure b. straight c. soft

Scores Part A (Same Meanings) ______%	Part B (Opposite Meanings) ______%

Number right in each part: 12 = 100%, 11 = 92%, 10 = 83%, 9 = 75%, 8 = 67%; 7 = 58%, 6 = 50%, 5 = 42%; 4 = 33%, 3 = 25%. 2 = 17%, 1 = 8%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

Unit Four



Chapter 19
alarm
collapse
defend
grief
modest
similar
relieved
victim
Chapter 20
confusion
decrease
distant
emerge
incident
realize
refuse
survive
Chapter 21
excess
persuade
quarrel
reaction
reveal
separate
stubborn
tremendous
Chapter 22
disaster
fascinate
generous
increase
predict
progress
scarce
tolerate
Chapter 23
detail
glare
humor
notice
occupy
perform
select
weary
Chapter 24
condemn
embrace
express
familiar
imagine
isolate
support
unite

UNIT FOUR: Pretest

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **alarm** a) to scare b) to please c) to relax

____ 2. **collapse** a) to build b) to stay safe c) to fall down

____ 3. **defend** a) to give up b) to keep safe c) to hurt

____ 4. **grief** a) sadness b) happiness c) boredom

____ 5. **modest** a) not working hard at something b) not thinking too highly of oneself c) thinking very highly of oneself

____ 6. **relieved** a) unhappy b) not caring c) less worried

____ 7. **similar** a) not safe b) good-looking c) alike

____ 8. **victim** a) a person who is hurt b) a person who hurts someone else c) a person who helps others

____ 9. **confusion** a) a feeling of danger b) a feeling of not knowing what to do c) a feeling of peace

____ 10. **decrease** a) to make less b) to make greater c) to keep the same

____ 11. **distant** a) nearby b) far away c) different

____ 12. **emerge** a) to stay still b) to get lost c) to come out

____ 13. **incident** a) a time of trouble b) a time of happiness c) a time of resting

____ 14. **realize** a) to hope b) to know c) to write

____ 15. **refuse** a) to decide not to b) to forget about c) to want to

____ 16. **survive** a) to live through b) to forget c) to cause

____ 17. **excess** a) used b) good c) extra

____ 18. **persuade** a) to get someone to do something b) to stop c) to leave

____ 19. **quarrel** a) a reason b) a fight c) a dream

____ 20. **reaction** a) something that happens because of something else b) an action that is hard to do c) more of something than is needed

____ 21. **reveal** a) to hide b) to forget c) to tell

____ 22. **separate** a) to bring together b) to make larger c) to put in different places

____ 23. **stubborn** a) easy to get along with b) not wanting to do something c) quick to learn

____ 24. **tremendous** a) friendly b) ugly c) big

(Continues on next page)

____ 25. **disaster** a) something that causes suffering b) something interesting c) something that turns out well

____ 26. **fascinate** a) to bore greatly b) to frighten c) to interest greatly

____ 27. **generous** a) willing to share b) selfish c) bad-tempered

____ 28. **increase** a) to make smaller b) to make greater c) to get rid of

____ 29. **predict** a) to lie b) to tell ahead of time c) to forget

____ 30. **progress** a) mistakes b) friends c) movement toward a goal

____ 31. **scarce** a) easily found b) famous c) few in number

____ 32. **tolerate** a) to let happen b) to stop c) to hide

____ 33. **detail** a) the end b) a small part c) a color

____ 34. **glare** a) to choose b) to smile c) to look at in an angry way

____ 35. **humor** a) a lesson b) anger c) something funny

____ 36. **notice** a) to see b) to forget c) to choose

____ 37. **occupy** a) to break b) to clean c) to live in

____ 38. **perform** a) to do b) to fail c) to leave

____ 39. **select** a) to break b) to lose c) to choose

____ 40. **weary** a) sad b) wide awake c) tired

____ 41. **condemn** a) to help b) to speak strongly against c) to give thanks for

____ 42. **embrace** a) to speak in an angry way b) to make fun of c) to hug

____ 43. **express** a) to make feelings known b) to whisper c) to picture in one's mind

____ 44. **familiar** a) far away b) well-known c) sad

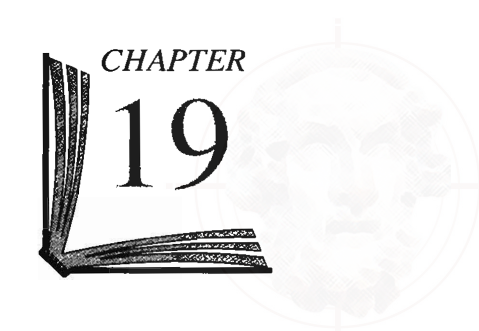
____ 45. **imagine** a) to picture in the mind b) to forget c) to say something nice

____ 46. **isolate** a) to put into a group with everyone else b) to teach c) to put by oneself

____ 47. **support** a) to show caring for b) to blame c) to meet

____ 48. **unite** a) to join together b) to fight c) to keep alone

SCORE: (Number correct ________ × 2) + 4 = __________ %





alarm
collapse
defend
grief
modest
relieved
similar
victim

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 alarm
/əˈlɑːm/
– verb

- Did it **alarm** you when our doorbell rang in the middle of the night?
- We were **alarmed** when we heard that a second-grader in our neighborhood was taken away by a stranger.

___*Alarm* means a. scare b. please c. relax

2 collapse
/kəˈlæps/
– verb

- The earthquake caused many tall buildings in the city to **collapse**.
- On the first night of our camping trip, the tent **collapsed** on top of us and woke us all up.

___*Collapse* means a. build b. stay safe c. fall down

3 defend
/dɪˈfend/
– verb

- A mother bear is always ready to **defend** her cubs against danger.
- Nikki takes karate lessons so she can **defend** herself if anyone tries to hurt her.

___*Defend* means a. give up b. keep safe c. harm

4 grief
/griːf/
– noun

- Rhetta felt a lot of **grief** when her grandmother died.
- With **grief** in his heart, David buried his dog Brownie, who had been his good friend for fifteen years.

___*Grief* means a. sadness b. happiness c. boredom

5 modest
/ˈmɒdɪst/
– adjective

- Even though she has won prizes for her paintings, Cara is **modest** about being such a good artist.
- It must be hard for movie stars to stay **modest** when people are always telling them how wonderful they are.

___*Modest* means a. not working hard at something b. not thinking too highly of oneself c. thinking too highly of oneself

6 relieved
/rɪˈliːvd/
– adjective

- We were **relieved** to learn that no one was hurt in the bus accident.
- Juan was **relieved** when the teacher called on someone else to answer the hard question.

___*Relieved* means

a. unhappy b. not caring c. made less worried

7 similar
/ˈsɪmɪlə(r)/
– adjective

- The guitar and banjo are **similar** in several ways. They both have long necks and strings that are played with the fingers.
- Joe and his dad sound so **similar** on the phone that I can't tell them apart.

___*Similar* means

a. not bragging b. good-looking c. alike

8 victim
/ˈvɪktɪm/
– noun

- For a crime **victim**, going to court and seeing the person who hurt him or her can be as scary as the crime itself.
- The Red Cross helps the **victims** of floods, earthquakes, and fires.

___*Victim* means

a. person who is harmed b. person who hurts someone else c. person who helps others

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ________________________ Great sadness; sorrow
2. ________________________ Not thinking too highly of oneself; not proud; humble
3. ________________________ To keep safe from harm; to protect
4. ________________________ A person who is hurt or done wrong to
5. ________________________ Alike; like another in some ways
6. ________________________ To fall down or fall to pieces
7. ________________________ No longer worried
8. ________________________ To make afraid

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **alarmed**	c. **defend**	e. **modest**	g. **similar**
b. **collapsed**	d. **grief**	f. **relieved**	h. **victims**

________ 1. The children used blocks to build a tower more than three feet high, but it ___ before anyone saw it.

________ 2. I bet your family is ___ that you decided not to take the job which is several hundred miles away.

________ 3. Hot peppers and sweet peppers look ___ but taste very different.

________ 4. The sight of a car rolling down the hill without a driver ___ everyone.

________ 5. When you go walking in the woods, wear long pants and long sleeves to ___ yourself against poison ivy.

________ 6. More than six million Jews were ___ of the Nazis during World War II.

________ 7. When Martin came into the room, we knew he had very bad news. His ___ showed on his face.

________ 8. Because my parents taught me to be ___, I never bragged about how well I did in school.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **alarm**	c. **defend**	e. **modest**	g. **similar**
b. **collapsed**	d. **grief**	f. **relieved**	h. **victim**

____
________ 1–2. Mr. Turner was so ___ that he was surprised when he won the best-teacher award. When he died a year later, his students felt real ___.

____
________ 3–4. I don't want to ___ you, but if you carry your wallet in your back pocket, you may become a robbery ___.

____
________ 5–6. Many old towns in Europe had walls built around them to ___ the people who lived there against enemies. Now, most of those walls are falling apart or have ___.

____
________ 7–8. I felt bad about breaking my grandmother's favorite plate, so I was ___ when I saw a ___ one I could buy and give her.

Final Check

A. A Young Librarian

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **collapse**	b. **grief**	c. **modest**	d. **similar**

Aja Henderson is a young girl who lives in Louisiana. Ever since Aja was little, she has loved to read. For her birthday and at holiday time, Aja always asked for books. And she always used any money she saved to buy more books. Because of all her books, Aja never felt alone. Her books kept her company. When she read a funny story, she laughed. When she read a really sad one, she felt (1)____________________.

After collecting for a few years, Aja had so many books that her family teased her, saying that their house might (2)____________________ from all the heavy books she owned. Then one day Aja found out something that bothered her. The other kids in her neighborhood could not enjoy books as much as she did. They did not read much, and there was no public° library nearby. So Aja came up with an idea. She would begin her own library! And that is exactly what Aja did.

At first, Aja was nervous that the neighborhood kids would not come to her library. But when several kids began stopping by her house to look through her books, she relaxed. After a while, all the neighborhood kids started to borrow books from her. In fact, today so many kids come to borrow her books that Aja gives the kids library cards (3)____________________ to the ones that real libraries use. Aja even helps some of the children learn to read. Everyone thinks Aja's library is wonderful. But she is (4)____________________ about what she has done. "Just seeing other kids learn to love reading is thanks enough for me," she says.

B. No More Harm

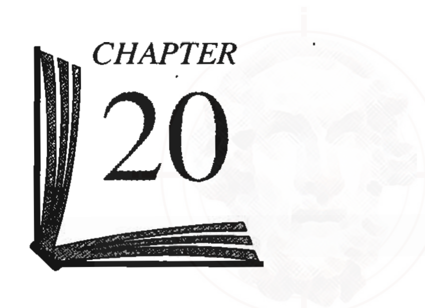
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **alarmed**	b. **defend**	c. **relieved**	d. **victims**

Pam Lynchner is an example of someone who fought against something she thought was wrong. In 1990, Lynchner was hurt badly when a man mugged her. The man was caught. Because he had been arrested twice before for mugging, he was sentenced to twenty years in jail. Lynchner was (5)____________________ to know that she was no longer in danger. But the feeling did not last. Just two years later she was (6)____________________ by the news that the man who had mugged her had been set free. To make it even worse, the man tried to sue Lynchner. He said that being in jail had been difficult and painful for him. Lynchner was distressed° that the man was out of jail and making problems for her. She began to talk to other (7)____________________ of crime. She heard many other stories about criminals who got out of jail early and kept bothering the people they had hurt. Lynchner wanted to do something about this, so she started a group to (8)____________________ the rights of those who had been harmed. She called her group "Justice for All." The group works to keep criminals from getting out of jail early. "Justice for All" now has more than five thousand members.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 _______%	Final Check _______%
	Sentence Check 2 _______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 confusion
/kən'fju:ʒən/
– noun

- The poor directions caused so much **confusion** that everyone arrived late for the party.
- The instructions for putting the toy together were missing, so at first I felt great **confusion**.

___ *Confusion* means a. feeling of danger b. feeling of not knowing what to do c. feeling of peace

2 decrease
/dɪ'kri:s/
– verb

- Putting ice on an injury helps **decrease** pain and swelling.
- To **decrease** your chances of getting sick, you should eat healthy foods and get plenty of exercise.

___ *Decrease* means a. make less b. make greater c. keep the same

3 distant
/'dɪstənt/
– adjective

- Some of the bright spots in the sky are **distant** planets that are millions of miles away.
- If we listened closely, we could hear the low rumble of a **distant** train moving toward us.

___ *Distant* means a. nearby b. not at all close c. different

4 emerge
/ɪ'mɜ:dʒ/
– verb

- Today, I saw a tiny brown mouse **emerge** from a small hole in one of our kitchen cabinets. When it saw me, it ran back into the hole.
- The story was about a two-headed monster that **emerged** from the forest at midnight to scare the town's children.

___ *Emerge* means a. stay still b. get lost c. come out

5 incident
/'ɪnsɪdənt/
– noun

- To stop an **incident** from happening, the police told the angry men to calm down and go home.
- The last **incident** I had with my car was two months ago when the battery went dead.

___ *Incident* means a. time of trouble b. time of happiness c. time of resting

6 realize
/ˈrɪəlaɪz/
– verb

- My children's teachers **realize** that I can't attend after-school meetings.
- Mr. Ramirez groaned "Oh, no" when he **realized** he had locked his keys in his car.

___*Realize* means a. hope b. know c. write

7 refuse
/rɪˈfjuːz/
– verb

- Despite all the warnings about high-fat foods, many people **refuse** to give up eating rich, heavy meals.
- My sister **refused** to stop eating her Halloween candy even though she felt sick from eating all the sugar.

___*Refuse to* means a. decide not to b. forget about c. want to

8 survive
/səˈvaɪv/
– verb

- Seat belts and air bags help people **survive** serious car crashes.
- In 1912, when the great ship *Titanic* sank, 1500 people died, but another 712 **survived** the accident.

___*Survive* means a. live through b. forget c. cause

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ________________ To come into view; to come out into the open
2. ________________ Something bad or upsetting that happens; a disturbing event
3. ________________ Far away
4. ________________ A feeling that things are mixed up and not at all clear
5. ________________ To make or become less
6. ________________ To understand that something is true
7. ________________ To make a strong decision not to do something
8. ________________ To stay alive through a dangerous time

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **confusion**	c. **distant**	e. **incidents**	g. **refuses**
b. **decreases**	d. **emerged**	f. **realizes**	h. **survive**

________________ 1. No one knew what was going on at the new restaurant. Because of all the ___, three tables received the wrong orders, and our waiter forgot about us completely.

________________ 2. We are lucky to live at a time when there are telephones. They let us speak to friends and relatives living in even the most ___ places.

________________ 3. The rain stopped, and the sun ___ from behind a dark storm cloud.

________________ 4. Do you think Robert ___ that his shirt and tie look terrible together?

________________ 5. No matter how many times we tell our puppy not to chew on our couch pillows, she still ___ to stop.

________________ 6. Because my parents lived through a fire that killed others, they often ask themselves, "Why did we ___ when others died?"

________________ 7. Putting more police on the streets ___ crime.

________________ 8. Although the large crowd at the football game was noisy, no ___ were reported between fans of the two teams.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **confusion**	c. **distant**	e. **incidents**	g. **refused**
b. **decrease**	d. **emerged**	f. **realized**	h. **survived**

____
________________ 1–2. The thick fog and heavy rain caused so much ___ for drivers that Mary had to ___ her driving speed to make sure she didn't pass her street.

____
________________ 3–4. In the morning, when Stephen ___ from his tent and saw half-eaten food all over, he ___ that an animal had visited his campsite during the night.

____
________________ 5–6. The plane crash was so ___ from any town that it took hours before police began to look for anyone who might have ___.

____
________________ 7–8. After two ___ at the playground when fights broke out, many parents ___ to let their kids go there anymore.

Final Check

A. Is He Man or Machine?

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **confusion**	b. **distant**	c. **emerges**	d. **refuses**

My friend Bob loves computers. His whole life centers around them. If Bob wants to buy something, he clicks a couple of keys and finds what he wants. When he wants to meet new people, he types messages to (1)____________________ computer lovers, many of whom live hundreds, even thousands, of miles away. They "talk" for hours on the computer but never meet each other in person. Sitting at the computer, Bob hardly ever (2)____________________ from his room to go outside. I'm nervous about what's happening to Bob. He feels cozy and relaxed with his computer but not around real people. I try to tell him that this isn't good. I tell him that spending so much time with his computer will prevent° him from having a full life. But he disagrees and (3)____________________ to listen to what I am saying. One day, the electricity will go out or his computer will break down. Maybe at this point, when he feels great (4)____________________, Bob will be forced to connect with human beings rather than with a machine.

B. Struck by Lightning

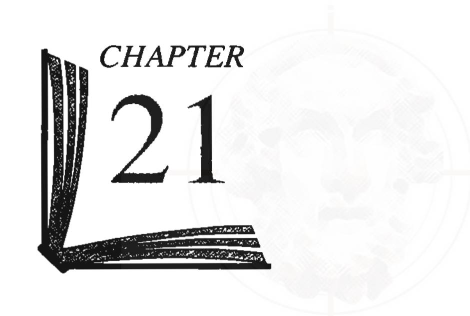
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **decrease**	b. **incident**	c. **realized**	d. **survived**

Who said lightning does not strike the same place twice? Roy Sullivan knows that isn't true. Sullivan, a forest ranger in Virginia, has been a victim° of lightning seven times. Over the years, Sullivan's shoulder, stomach, eyebrows, and ankles were burned. Once he was hit while sitting in his truck. The bolt pushed him out the door and threw him to the ground. During another (5)____________________, lightning struck his head, burned a hole in the hat he was wearing, set his hair on fire, moved down his body, and left through the toes of his boots. Somehow, Sullivan (6)____________________ all these strikes. Once he (7)____________________ that lightning had a way of finding him, Sullivan made a special plan to (8)____________________ his family's chances of being struck. Whenever a storm came near, he would go — all alone — into the kitchen and would make his wife and kids go into the basement, far from him. Sullivan died in 1983 at the age of 71. His death had nothing to do with lightning.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 _______%	Final Check _______%
	Sentence Check 2 _______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





excess	**reveal**
persuade	**separate**
quarrel	**stubborn**
reaction	**tremendous**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 excess
/ɪkˈses/
– adjective

- Several restaurants in town give their **excess** food to groups that feed the poor.
- I will paint the living room first, and if there is any **excess** paint, I'll do the hallway.

___*Excess* means

a. leftover b. good c. used

2 persuade
/pəˈsweɪd/
– verb

- Nathan wants to drop out of school, but his parents are trying to **persuade** him to stay.
- Advertising often **persuades** people to buy many things they don't need.

___*Persuade* means

a. get someone to do something b. stop c. leave

3 quarrel
/ˈkwɒrəl/
– noun

- Jamal and Michael have not spoken to each other for five years, ever since they had a bad **quarrel** about money.
- The neighbors' **quarrel** was very loud. Their yelling and screaming made me think they might hurt each other, so I called the police.

___*Quarrel* means

a. reason b. fight c. dream

4 reaction
/rɪˈækʃən/
– noun

- Whenever our cat is petted, her **reaction** is to purr.
- If something comes flying toward your face, your **reaction** will be to pull back quickly.

___*Reaction* means

a. something that happens because of something else b. action that is hard to do c. more of something than is needed

5 reveal
/rɪˈvi:l/
– verb

- If I promise to keep it a secret, will you **reveal** what you are getting Dora for her birthday?
- My grandma never **revealed** her age to us; she said only that she was "over forty."

___*Reveal* means

a. hide b. forget c. tell

6 separate
/ˈsepərət/
– verb

• In cooking class, we learned how to **separate** eggs by cracking them and putting the yolks in one bowl and the whites in another.

• To get the noisy kids to be quiet, the teacher **separated** them so they were sitting far away from each other.

___*Separate* means a. bring together b. make larger c. put apart

7 stubborn
/ˈstʌbən/
– adjective

• The **stubborn** boy would not go to bed, even though the baby sitter kept asking him to.

• It is hard to work with **stubborn** people. They are not willing to listen to others or look at different ways of doing things.

___*Stubborn* means a. easy to get along with b. not wanting to do something c. quick to learn

8 tremendous
/trɪˈmendəs/
– adjective

• The blue whale is a **tremendous** animal. Its tongue alone can weigh up to 8,900 pounds.

• Outer space is so **tremendous** that no one can really understand its size.

___*Tremendous* means a. friendly b. ugly c. big

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________________ Very large
2. ____________________ Something that is done because something else is done first
3. ____________________ To use words to get someone to think or do something
4. ____________________ Not wanting to change or give in
5. ____________________ Extra; more than is needed
6. ____________________ To put or move two or more things apart; to put in different places
7. ____________________ A fight with words; an argument
8. ____________________ To make something known

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **excess**	c. **quarrels**	e. **revealed**	g. **stubborn**
b. **persuade**	d. **reaction**	f. **separates**	h. **tremendous**

________________ 1. The class cheered when the teacher ___ that I had won the contest.

________________ 2. Although butterflies don't look strong, every year they fly the ___ distance from Canada all the way down to Mexico.

________________ 3. When the boss yelled at Sara, her ___ was to cry.

________________ 4. The donkey is a ___ animal. If it doesn't want to move, it won't.

________________ 5. You cannot say anything that will ___ me to go see that horror movie — I don't enjoy being afraid.

________________ 6. Children may argue a lot, but they soon forget their ___ and play together happily.

________________ 7. Every morning at work, Rita ___ the mail into three piles — one for the company president, one for the vice president, and one for the office manager.

________________ 8. My family grows fruit. We eat most of it and sell the ___ fruit at a roadside stand.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **excess**	c. **quarrel**	e. **revealed**	g. **stubborn**
b. **persuade**	d. **reaction**	f. **separate**	h. **tremendous**

________________ 1–2. My little sister eats only vanilla ice cream. I tried to ___ her to taste
________________ other flavors, but she is so ___ she won't take even a tiny bite.

________________ 3–4. When the ___ burst of fireworks filled the sky, everyone's ___ was to
________________ say, "Ooooohhhh!"

________________ 5–6. Every year, the library sells its ___ books. Employees ___ the books
________________ into two piles and sell hardcover books for a dollar and paperback books for fifty cents.

________________ 7–8. When Irina learned that Glenn had ___ her secret to his friend, they
________________ had a big ___.

Final Check

A. Whose Fault Is It?

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **persuade**	b. **quarrel**	c. **revealed**	d. **stubborn**

Mrs. Harris looked very upset. When I asked her what was wrong, she answered "Nothing." But soon she (1)____________________ what was happening. "My daughters, Maya and Tracy, have had a big fight," she said. "The (2)____________________ started over a skirt. Maya had a new skirt that Tracy wanted to wear on a date. Since Maya wasn't home, Tracy took the skirt without asking. When Maya discovered° what Tracy had done, she took Tracy's favorite sweater and wore it to school. There, by accident, some ketchup got spilled on the sweater. Now both girls are really angry at each other. Tracy is too (3)____________________ to say she should not have taken the skirt without asking. But Maya is just as bad. She says it is Tracy's fault that the sweater got dirty. I'm trying to (4)____________________ both girls to say they are sorry, but neither of them will. If they don't make up pretty soon, they're going to drive me crazy!"

B. Forests Full of Life

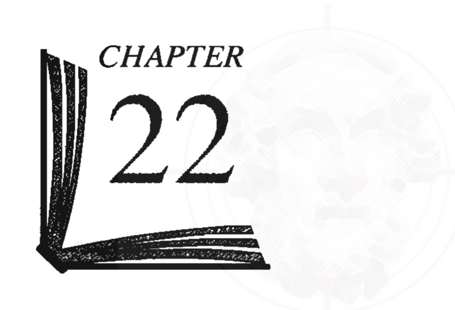
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **excess**	b. **reaction**	c. **separated**	d. **tremendous**

Forests are beautiful. Trees stretch high in the air, making a leafy green roof. Below, small young trees dot the forest floor. One of the most interesting things about a forest is the way new trees get planted. Small animals, like squirrels and chipmunks, pick up seeds that have fallen from the trees to the ground. These animals gather more seeds than they can eat. They take the (5)____________________ seeds and bury them to eat later. That is how seeds get (6)____________________ from the trees they grew on, sometimes by hundreds of miles. Often the animals forget about the seeds they buried and never go back to eat them. As the months go by, the rain, sunlight, and rich soil act upon the seeds. The (7)____________________ of the seeds is to grow upward until they emerge° above the ground. Over the years, some of the tiny plants grow into (8)____________________ trees. Their branches of the big trees become home for the same kinds of animals that planted them long ago.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ________%	Final Check ________%
	Sentence Check 2 ________%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





disaster	**predict**
fascinate	**progress**
generous	**scarce**
increase	**tolerate**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 disaster
/dɪˈzɑːstə(r)/
– noun

- The family party turned into a **disaster** when two cousins got into a bad fight and had to go to the hospital.
- Every year, hurricanes, floods, and other natural **disasters** cause thousands of people to lose their homes.

___*Disaster* means
a. something that causes harm
b. something interesting
c. something that turns out well

2 fascinate
/ˈfæsɪneɪt/
– verb

- It's easy to see that cars **fascinate** Nelson. His room is filled with car magazines.
- The dog's wagging tail **fascinates** the baby. She keeps trying to grab it.

___*Fascinate* means
a. bore greatly
b. frighten
c. interest greatly

3 generous
/ˈdʒenərəs/
– adjective

- Nick is very **generous** with his new car — he lets his friends drive it whenever they ask.
- The **generous** couple gave each of their nephews a hundred-dollar check at graduation.

___*Generous* means
a. willing to share
b. selfish
c. bad-tempered

4 increase
/ɪnˈkriːs/
– verb

- If you smoke, you greatly **increase** your chances of getting heart disease.
- My little brother still does not understand that study **increases** one's chances for good grades.

___*Increase* means
a. make smaller
b. make greater
c. get rid of

5 predict
/prɪˈdɪkt/
– verb

- Many scientists **predict** that one day we will find life on Mars.
- Dora **predicted** that her baby would be a girl, but she was wrong.

___*Predict* means
a. lie
b. tell ahead of time
c. forget

6 progress
/ˈprəʊgres/
– noun

- I have made real **progress** with my driving lessons. Now I can park my car on the street without hitting the curb.
- Tia is making excellent **progress** in learning English.

___*Progress* means a. mistakes b. friends c. movement toward a goal

7 scarce
/skeəs/
– adjective

- So many elephants have been killed for their ivory that the animals have become **scarce**.
- Peaches were **scarce** this year because bad weather destroyed most of the crop.

___*Scarce* means a. easily found b. famous c. few in number

8 tolerate
/ˈtɒləreɪt/
– verb

- My mother does not **tolerate** TV watching at dinner time. She wants us to sit around the table and talk together.
- There is a no-smoking rule where I work. The only place where smoking is **tolerated** is the parking lot.

___*Tolerate* means a. let happen b. stop c. hide

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ______________ To make greater or larger; to add to
2. ______________ Movement toward a goal
3. ______________ Few in number; hard to find; rare
4. ______________ To say what one thinks will happen in the future
5. ______________ A happening that causes loss and suffering
6. ______________ To interest someone greatly; to hold someone's interest
7. ______________ Happy to give or share; unselfish
8. ______________ To let something go on without trying to stop it; to put up with

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **disaster**	c. **generous**	e. **predict**	g. **scarce**
b. **fascinates**	d. **increased**	f. **progress**	h. **tolerate**

________________ 1. The flu that hit the United States in 1918 was a ___ that killed more than 500,000 Americans.

________________ 2. People who have ___ hearts always find time to help others.

________________ 3. Lifting weights has greatly ___ my strength.

________________ 4. Some parents do not ___ their children's using swear words.

________________ 5. The builders are making good ___ with my aunt's new home — the roof is on already.

________________ 6. People think that the stars can help them ___ what is going to happen in their lives.

________________ 7. Mr. Beck is a hard teacher. A lot of students in his class receive C's. A's are really ___.

________________ 8. I laughed the other day when I heard someone say, "Work ___ me. I can sit and look at it for hours."

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **disasters**	c. **generous**	e. **predict**	g. **scarce**
b. **fascinated**	d. **increase**	f. **progress**	h. **tolerates**

________________ 1–2. Since no one can ___ when an earthquake will happen, it is one of the
________________ most feared of all ___.

________________ 3–4. Tonya is such a ___ person that she ___ her neighbor's coming over
________________ almost every day to borrow something.

________________ 5–6. Nicki's boss cares about her education. He says he won't ___ her
________________ hours at her job until she makes better ___ at school.

________________ 7–8. The movie *Gorillas in the Mist* is about a woman named Dian Fossey.
________________ Apes and gorillas ___ Fossey, and she was angry that they were becoming ___ because of illegal hunting.

Final Check

A. An Animal in Danger

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **disaster**	b. **fascinated**	c. **scarce**	d. **tolerate**

For thousands of years, tigers have (1)________________________ human beings. Carvings made in Russia six thousand years ago show that people there thought of the tiger as a god. Children across the world have grown up hearing stories, songs, and poems about tigers. Such stories tell of the animal's strength, beauty, and danger. But today this beautiful cat faces a problem that is alarming° to scientists. The tiger is becoming (2)________________________. It is dying out so fast that many scientists say there will soon be no tigers in the wild. The only ones left will be in zoos. This would be a real (3)________________________ for animal lovers around the world.

Why are the tigers dying out? They are being killed for their skins, bones, and other body parts. People throughout the world believe that tiger parts make strong medicine. The whiskers, the eyes, the claws, and the bones are used to treat different sicknesses. A hundred years ago, there were about 150,000 tigers in the world. Today there may be as few as 5,000. Many countries no longer (4)________________________ the killing of the tiger. But it may be too late to save this beautiful animal.

B. The Simple Life of the Amish

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **generous**	b. **increase**	c. **predict**	d. **progress**

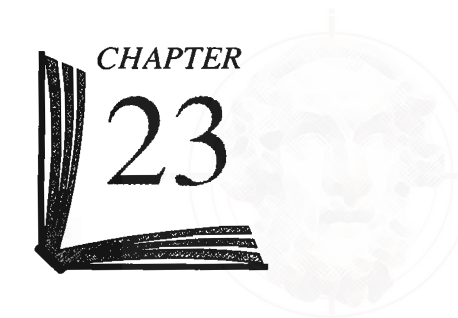
The Amish are members of a church that was formed in the late 1600s. They live in Pennsylvania, Ohio, Indiana, and other states. Their traditions° have not changed much over the years. They believe that human beings should live simply. They dress the same way the Amish did three hundred years ago. Living mostly on farms, they use horses instead of tractors to do the work. They do not have electricity or drive cars.

The Amish want their children to go to school. They want to see them do well and make (5)________________________ in reading, writing, and arithmetic. But they believe that higher education is not needed. So Amish children leave school after the eighth grade. Most Amish marry at a young age, live on farms, and have large families.

Many outsiders have trouble understanding how the Amish can live without cars, electricity, VCRs, and phones. Some people (6)________________________ that in the future, the Amish will have trouble holding onto their young people. And it is true that some young people leave the Amish church, wanting to (7)________________________ their freedom. But many Amish are very happy. They are (8)________________________ people who share what they have with one another. To them, non-Amish people rush around too much and miss the simple joys of life.

Scores	Sentence Check 1	________%	Final Check	________%
	Sentence Check 2	________%		

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





detail	**occupy**
glare	**perform**
humor	**select**
notice	**weary**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 detail
/ˈdiːteɪl/
– noun

- The student's report was very good except for one **detail** — the word *flower* was spelled wrong.
- Because the United States dollar bill has so many tiny **details**, it is hard to copy.

___*Detail* means a. end b. part c. color

2 glare
/gleə(r)/
– verb

- My dog-hating neighbors **glare** at me whenever I take Lassie for a walk.
- Instead of yelling, my father silently **glared** at me when I came home two hours late.

___*Glare* means a. choose b. smile c. give an angry look

3 humor
/ˈhjuːmə(r)/
– noun

- The movie was supposed to be funny, but I could see no **humor** in it.
- Our English teacher likes to begin each class with **humor**, such as a joke or a funny story.

___*Humor* means a. lesson b. anger c. something funny

4 notice
/ˈnəʊtɪs/
– verb

- Did you **notice** how sad Emily seemed today?
- Sitting in the food court at the mall, I **noticed** a small child who looked lost.

___*Notice* means a. see b. forget c. choose

5 occupy
/ˈɒkjʊpaɪ/
– verb

- Several silver and blue fish **occupy** a small glass bowl in the living room.
- Chen was upset to find roaches **occupying** every drawer in his new apartment.

___*Occupy* means a. break b. clean c. live in

6 perform
/pəˈfɔːm/
– verb

- The children get their allowance only if they **perform** their jobs around the house.
- I hope that I **performed** well on yesterday's English test.

___*Perform* means a. do b. fail c. leave

7 select
/sɪˈlekt/
– verb

- A salesclerk helped me **select** a watch for my father's birthday.
- The child **selected** a blue crayon from the box and then drew a picture of his dog.

___*Select* means a. break b. lose c. pick out

8 weary
/ˈwɪərɪ/
– adjective

- After her baby was born, Lucy was happy but **weary**.
- You must have been up too late last night. You look **weary**.

___*Weary* means a. sad b. wide awake c. needing rest

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ______________________ To look at in an angry way
2. ______________________ Something that makes people laugh
3. ______________________ To live in
4. ______________________ To see and understand something that is happening
5. ______________________ To choose
6. ______________________ Tired; worn out in body or mind
7. ______________________ To do something
8. ______________________ A small part; a single item

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **detail**	c. **humor**	e. **occupy**	g. **selected**
b. **glared**	d. **notice**	f. **performed**	h. **weary**

________________ 1. I don't know the people who ___ the apartment across the hall.

________________ 2. Janet planned her party carefully, not forgetting a single ___.

________________ 3. The doctor who is taking out Tony's tonsils has ___ the operation many times before.

________________ 4. When the cashier walked away to make a phone call, the people waiting in the check-out line ___ at her.

________________ 5. After finishing the five-mile race, Gina fell on the grass, too ___ to take another step.

________________ 6. When Phil got sticky gum all over the bottom of his expensive new shoes, he could have gotten angry. Instead he laughed at the ___ of it all.

________________ 7. The movie director interviewed more than fifty actors before he ___ one for the starring role.

________________ 8. We were so busy at work that we did not ___ it had begun to snow.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **details**	c. **humor**	e. **occupy**	g. **select**
b. **glared**	d. **noticed**	f. **perform**	h. **weary**

________________ 1–2. Tara ___ at her unkind landlord when he told her that she could not
________________ ___ her apartment anymore.

________________ 3–4. When I ___ my neighbor's children laughing at my new haircut, I
________________ knew other people would also see the ___ in how silly I looked.

________________ 5–6. The blues singer is ___ from traveling almost every day of the year.
________________ But in order to make a living, she must ___ her act night after night.

________________ 7–8. "When you ___ a subject for your paper," said the teacher, "choose
________________ something you know a lot about. Then you can include many interesting ___ in your paper."

Final Check

A. Taking a Break with TV

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **humor**	b. **noticed**	c. **select**	d. **weary**

Most men and women work hard — sometimes at jobs they don't like — to bring money home to their families. After a hard day on the job and a long ride home, these people feel (1)______________. So after dinner, when they finally have some leisure°, they like to use that time by relaxing in front of the TV. Have you ever (2)______________ the kind of TV show they like to watch? Often they (3)______________ lighthearted shows about families much like their own. For many people, these shows are fun to watch and bring much needed (4)______________ into their lives. By watching shows that make them laugh, people get a break from their everyday problems.

B. Working and Living Together

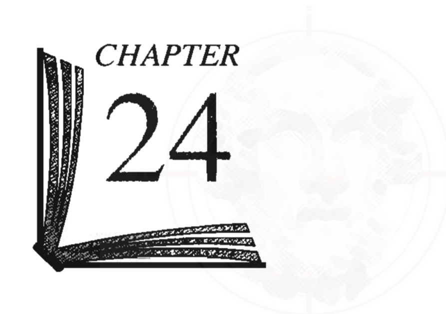
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

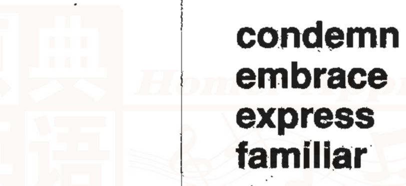
a. **details**	b. **glare**	c. **occupy**	d. **perform**

Taking care of a home is not easy. People who (5)______________ a house or apartment know that there are many jobs that must get done. To help out, every family needs to (6)______________ a number of jobs to keep the house in good order. Dishes need to be washed, repairs need to be made, laundry must be done, and trash must be thrown out. Sometimes small jobs like dusting or vacuuming go undone because they seem like unimportant (7)______________. From time to time, quarrels° may break out over who is to do what. For example, a brother and sister may (8)______________ at each other because each thinks it is the other's turn to clean the bathroom. Mother may yell at Father for throwing his dirty laundry on the floor. Father may get angry at Mother for leaving dirty dishes in the sink. Every home will have some problems. But members of the family must learn to work out their differences. As they do, the ties — and the love — between them will grow stronger and stronger.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ______%	Final Check ______%
	Sentence Check 2 ______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





condemn	**imagine**
embrace	**isolate**
express	**support**
familiar	**unite**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 condemn
/kən'dem/
– verb

- Most doctors **condemn** smoking, especially around children.
- The preacher **condemned** television shows that are full of sex and violence.

___*Condemn* means   a. help   b. give thanks for   c. speak strongly against

2 embrace
/ɪm'breɪs/
– verb

- In Latin America, men often hug when they meet each other, but in the United States, most men do not **embrace** each other.
- At the airport, a man **embraced** a woman tightly before saying goodbye.

___*Embrace* means   a. speak in an angry way   b. push away   c. put one's arms around

3 express
/ɪk'spres/
– verb

- A friendly wave is one way to **express** that you are glad to see someone.
- Ann's cat **expressed** its dislike for me by hissing and showing its teeth.

___*Express* means   a. make feelings known   b. whisper   c. picture in one's mind

4 familiar
/fə'mɪljə(r)/
– adjective

- Because its restaurants are in many countries, McDonald's is **familiar** to people all over the world.
- I grew up in this small town, so just about every street here is **familiar** to me.

___*Familiar* means   a. far away   b. often seen or heard   c. sad

5 imagine
/ɪ'mædʒɪn/
– verb

- To warm myself when it is cold outside, I often **imagine** that I am sitting by a nice warm fire.
- Nervous about sleeping in a strange room, my little brother began to **imagine** that there was a tiger under the bed.

___*Imagine* means   a. picture in the mind   b. forget   c. remember

6 isolate
/ˈaɪsəleɪt/
– verb

- If I feel a need to be away from others, I **isolate** myself by going into my bedroom and locking the door.
- When Robbie got chicken pox, his parents **isolated** him in his room so their other kids would not get sick.

___*Isolate* means a. put into a group with everyone else b. teach c. put by oneself

7 support
/səˈpɔːt/
– verb

- When somebody dies, people often **support** the family by sending flowers.
- After Nita's twins were born, her friends **supported** her by bringing her meals and doing her housework.

___*Support* means a. show caring for b. blame c. meet

8 unite
/juːˈnaɪt/
– verb

- Each year, my relatives from all over the country **unite** at my grandmother's house for a big family party.
- Many small streams **unite** to form the large river that flows by my house.

___*Unite* means a. join together b. fight c. keep alone

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ______________ To say strongly that something is wrong or bad
2. ______________ To keep someone or something apart from others
3. ______________ To hug someone
4. ______________ To help someone by saying or doing nice, caring things
5. ______________ To picture something in one's mind
6. ______________ To come together
7. ______________ Often seen or heard; well-known
8. ______________ To show one's feelings through words or actions

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **condemn**	c. **expressed**	e. **imagine**	g. **support**
b. **embraced**	d. **familiar**	f. **isolates**	h. **united**

________ 1. Because Jessie grew up in a big city, the sounds of heavy trucks, car horns, and police sirens are ___ to her.

________ 2. People in town ___ the high school's basketball team by attending games and cheering loudly.

________ 3. It is nice to ___ a world without wars.

________ 4. Many people on the block ___ to form a Neighborhood Watch group.

________ 5. Marsha ___ her new doll as if it were a long-lost love.

________ 6. The zookeeper ___ new animals until he is sure they have no diseases.

________ 7. When children behave badly, adults should ___ what the children do, not the children themselves.

________ 8. Because he was shy, George ___ his love for Sarah by writing her a letter.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **condemn**	c. **express**	e. **imagine**	g. **support**
b. **embraced**	d. **familiar**	f. **isolate**	h. **united**

____
________ 1–2. When I went to Jeff's funeral, I didn't know how to ___ my feelings in words. So I just went to his parents and quietly ___ them.

____
________ 3–4. Because I live in a city where I don't know anyone, I sometimes like to ___ that I see friendly, ___ faces from my childhood.

____
________ 5–6. People on our block ___ drugs and have ___ to force drug dealers to move out of the neighborhood.

____
________ 7–8. Because her illness is catching, Janine has to ___ herself at home. But her friends ___ her by calling often and sending cards and gifts.

Final Check

A. The Horror of Hate

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **condemn**	b. **imagined**	c. **isolated**	d. **united**

During World War II, Adolf Hitler, the leader of Germany, had a horrible idea. In his mind, he (1)____________________ a world with a "perfect race." Who would be in this perfect race? People like the Germans — blond, blue-eyed people. Many Germans liked Hitler's ideas and (2)____________________ with him in his Nazi party. The Nazis thought that most other people were not good enough to live. For example, they hated people who were Jewish, or physically ill, or retarded, or homosexuals. The Nazis took all these people from their homes. Many were killed right away. Others were (3)____________________ in terrible prison camps. In the camps, many more were killed, and others were forced to work. Many of those workers did not survive.° By the end of the war, the Nazis had killed millions of people. It is scary to think that even today there are "hate groups" like the Nazis in countries around the world. It is up to people of all backgrounds and beliefs to (4)____________________ the hateful thinking of such groups.

B. Taking Time for Thanks

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **embraced**	b. **expressed**	c. **familiar**	d. **support**

Last week, I got a letter that had (5)____________________ handwriting on it. Though I knew I had seen the writing before, I wasn't sure whose it was. When I opened the letter, I was surprised to see it was from a friend I had not heard from in a while. I was even more surprised to read what she wrote. In her letter, my friend (6)____________________ her thanks for a small favor I did a year ago. At that time, she and her brothers and sisters flew into town to be with their dying mother. I had cooked them some meals and done some shopping to (7)____________________ the family during that hard time. "I was so upset when Mother died that I don't know if I ever really thanked you," my friend wrote. "I want you to know how much your help meant to me at that time of grief°." Her letter made me feel great. It also made me think about all the people I am thankful for in my life. Do I take the time to let them know that I am grateful? I decided to start right at home. When my daughter came home from school that day, I (8)____________________ her and said, "Thank you for being a wonderful kid." I am going to try to remember to say "thank you" more often.

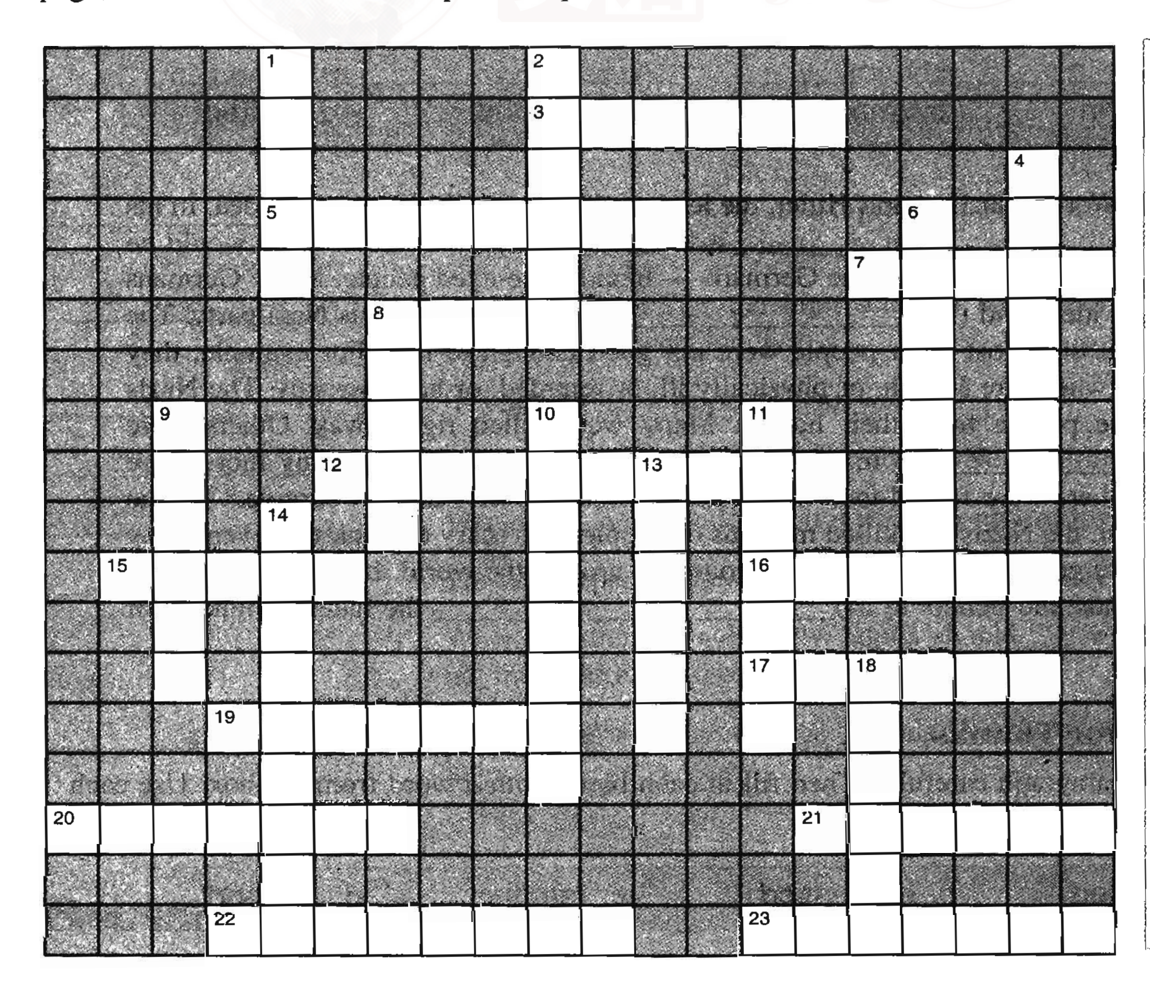
Scores	Sentence Check 1	_______%	Final Check	_______%
	Sentence Check 2	_______%		

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT FOUR: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-four words from Unit Four. Using the meanings at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.



alarm
confusion
decrease
detail
distant
emerge
excess
glare
grief
humor
incident
notice
occupy
perform
quarrel
reaction
refuse
reveal
select
separate
support
survive
tremendous
weary

ACROSS

3. To live in
5. Something that is done because something else is done first
7. Tired; worn out in body or mind
8. Great sadness; sorrow
12. Very large
15. Something that makes people laugh
16. To make something known
17. To come into view; to come out into the open
19. To help someone by saying or doing nice, caring things
20. To stay alive through a dangerous time
21. To choose
22. Something bad or upsetting that happens
23. Far away

DOWN

1. To make afraid
2. To see and understand something that is happening
4. To do something
6. To make or become less
8. To look at in an angry way
9. To make a strong decision not to do something
10. To put or move two or more things apart; to put in different places
11. A fight with words; an argument
13. A small part; a single item
14. A feeling that things are mixed up and not at all clear
18. Extra; more than is needed

UNIT FOUR: Test 1

On the answer line at the left, write the word that best completes each item.

________________ 1. When my spirits get low, I like to ___ escaping to a warm, sunny island in the middle of the ocean.
a. imagine b. occupy c. unite

________________ 2. I'm lucky. My family has always been there to ___ me during the hard times.
a. support b. alarm c. fascinate

________________ 3. When I am ___ at the end of a long hot summer day, nothing makes me feel better than a frosty glass of iced tea.
a. modest b. weary c. generous

________________ 4. Our company is making ___ in hiring more women, but it still has a way to go.
a. progress b. details c. confusion

________________ 5. Theo was afraid he had broken his ankle, so he was ___ when the doctor told him it was just a sprain.
a. stubborn b. relieved c. modest

________________ 6. Puppies and kittens ___ young children. Kids seem to like anything that is smaller than they are.
a. fascinate b. separate c. collapse

________________ 7. When Mrs. Diaz met her grandson for the first time, she rushed over and ___ him tightly.
a. embraced b. defended c. performed

________________ 8. The ___ of the earthquake needed shelter, food, and medical care.
a. quarrels b. details c. victims

________________ 9. The thick fog caused a ___ — a fifteen-car accident on the bridge.
a. disaster b. detail c. progress

________________ 10. I am trying to ___ my teenage children to save some of the money they earn. So far, I have had no luck.
a. predict b. perform c. persuade

________________ 11. Whenever I ask my wife to give up cigarettes, she ___ at me in anger.
a. emerges b. glares c. embraces

________________ 12. Although Tania is great in the kitchen, she is very ___ about her cooking. She always says, "It wasn't hard to make. You could do it, too."
a. familiar b. scarce c. modest

(Continues on next page)

_______________ 13. Gina and Martin live on the first floor. Gina's parents ___ the upstairs apartment.

a. embrace b. occupy c. perform

_______________ 14. Sirens screaming in the night always ___ my children. They become so scared that I have to sit up with them until they fall back to sleep.

a. select b. notice c. alarm

_______________ 15. I have never understood why the roof of a river tunnel does not ___ under the weight of all the water on top of it.

a. reveal b. collapse c. survive

_______________ 16. Did you ever ___ how often the phone rings when you are taking a shower?

a. notice b. survive c. reveal

_______________ 17. To ___ their homes from the forest fire, the owners sprayed their roofs with water.

a. defend b. perform c. predict

_______________ 18. Being able to laugh and see ___ even at bad times can help you get through almost anything.

a. humor b. progress c. grief

_______________ 19. A good boss does not ___ lateness or sloppy work.

a. predict b. isolate c. tolerate

_______________ 20. As we headed toward the parade, we could hear the ___ sound of the band playing, even though we were almost half a mile away.

a. stubborn b. weary c. distant

_______________ 21. I could not decide which of three books to ___, so I bought all of them.

a. emerge b. select c. separate

_______________ 22. Everyone in our neighborhood ___ the city's decision to close the police station on our street. We felt that the closing would put us in danger.

a. revealed b. condemned c. survived

_______________ 23. People who have bad heart problems are often ___ in a special unit of a hospital. There they can receive the extra care they need.

a. imagined b. isolated c. refused

_______________ 24. Without your helpful map to guide us, we would have felt great ___ trying to find our way to your new home.

a. confusion b. quarrel c. victim

Score (Number correct × 4) + 4 = ________%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT FOUR: Test 2

PART A

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **details**	d. **express**	g. **predict**	j. **realize**
b. **emerged**	e. **incident**	h. **quarrel**	k. **stubborn**
c. **excess**	f. **perform**	i. **reaction**	l. **tremendous**

________ 1. Sometimes my parents treat me like a child and do not seem to ___ that I am a grownup.

________ 2. An important study skill is being able to tell the difference between important main points and smaller, less important ___.

________ 3. Kids often don't want to eat new foods and can be very ___ about trying something even a little bit different.

________ 4. I got a ___ cut on my forehead when I banged into the windshield.

________ 5. You cannot hope to ___ well on a test if you had no sleep the night before.

________ 6. After the thunderstorm, our dog ___ from his hiding place under the bed.

________ 7. There was so much ___ food after the party that I did not have to cook for almost a week.

________ 8. Marsha's knees help her ___ the weather. When they hurt, she knows rainy weather is on the way.

________ 9. When my sister told me she was getting a divorce, my first ___ was to say that she was doing the wrong thing. But later I understood that she was doing what was best for her family.

________ 10. There was a strange ___ in our building yesterday. The glass in all the doors suddenly broke, even though nothing had hit them.

________ 11. Melba and Joe had an argument on Saturday, but it was nothing serious — just a lovers' ___.

________ 12. Because small children don't know how to ___ anger in words, they sometimes show they are upset by hitting, kicking, and screaming.

(Continues on next page)

PART B

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **decrease**	d. **grief**	g. **reveal**	j. **similar**
b. **familiar**	e. **increased**	h. **scarce**	k. **survive**
c. **generous**	f. **refused**	i. **separate**	l. **united**

________ 13. Human beings can ___ several weeks without food, but they can live only a few days without water.

________ 14. When they do laundry, many people ___ light- and dark-colored clothes. I just throw in everything all together.

________ 15. My boss ___ to give me a vacation because she needed extra help at the store.

________ 16. Prices always seem to go up but never come down. It would be nice if they would ___ every once in a while.

________ 17. Most people feel deep ___ when a pet dies.

________ 18. When rain is ___ during the growing season, farmers often lose their crops.

________ 19. Crimes ___ in our town last year. Police are trying to figure out why so many crimes took place these last twelve months.

________ 20. The neighbors put aside their differences and ___ to fight the plan to close a nearby park.

________ 21. I don't mind coming home after being on vacation. It feels good to be back in my old ___ routine.

________ 22. If you say, "My good friend Jack would give me the shirt off his back," that is another way of saying he is very ___.

________ 23. If you never drink Coke or Pepsi, you might think they taste ___. But those who drink a lot of soda say they don't taste a bit alike!

________ 24. To protect the people whose homes had been robbed, the newspaper did not ___ their names or addresses.

Scores	Part A (Adding a Word)	______%	Part B (Adding a Word)	______%

Number right in each part: 12 = 100%, 11 = 92%, 10 = 83%, 9 = 75%, 8 = 67%; 7 = 58%, 6 = 50%, 5 = 42%; 4 = 33%, 3 = 25%. 2 = 17%, 1 = 8%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT FOUR: Test 3

PART A

In the space at the left, write the letter of the choice that has the **same** meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

___ 1. The rising moon **emerged** from behind the trees. In other words, it
a. stayed hidden. b. was setting.
c. came into view.

___ 2. The fruit store has **excess** bananas. The store has
a. too few bananas. b. too many bananas.
c. no bananas.

___ 3. You write a note to someone saying, "I would like to **express** my thanks." That means you wish to
a. put your thanks into words. b. repeat your thanks.
c. take back your thanks.

___ 4. If friends tell you about an **incident** at a nearby school, they tell you about
a. something bad that happened there. b. the interesting courses there.
c. the good teachers there.

___ 5. If children **perform** their jobs around the house, they
a. complain about doing the work. b. do the work they should.
c. don't do the work they should.

___ 6. I **predicted** that both my roommates would move out by the end of the year. In other words, I said
a. what I thought they would do in the future. b. what I wished they would do.
c. that I was angry about what they planned to do.

___ 7. If two friends had a **quarrel** at a restaurant, they had
a. no money to pay the check. b. a good time there.
c. an argument there.

___ 8. My coworkers came up to me and asked, "What will your **reaction** be if the boss wants you to work the day shift from now on?" My coworkers wanted to know
a. how I would answer the boss. b. what my pay would be.
c. what my work hours would be.

___ 9. When we **realize** that the people we look up to are not perfect, we
a. don't believe that they make mistakes. b. understand that they make mistakes.
c. have trouble believing that they make mistakes.

___10. If friends tell you that you are **stubborn**, they mean that you
a. are a good friend. b. find it hard to change or give in.
c. change your mind all the time.

(Continues on next page)

____11. If friends **support** you during a difficult time, they
a. show their love and concern for you. b. do nothing to help you.
c. ask you if you can get along without their help.

____12. The new skyscraper downtown is a **tremendous** building. It's
a. very large. b. very new.
c. smaller than anyone expected.

PART B

In the space at the left, write the letter of the choice that is the **opposite** of the **boldfaced** word.

____13. The opposite of **decrease** is
a. smile b. get larger c. run fast

____14. The opposite of **distant** is
a. neat b. messy c. close

____15. The opposite of **familiar** is
a. strong b. sharp c. unknown

____16. The opposite of **grief** is
a. joy b. money c. sadness

____17. The opposite of **increase** is
a. get smaller b. sit down c. forget

____18. The opposite of **reveal** is
a. hide b. help c. hurry

____19. The opposite of **scarce** is
a. dry b. wet c. many

____20. The opposite of **separate** is
a. dance b. jump c. join together

____21. The opposite of **similar** is
a. smart b. different c. broken

____22. The opposite of **survive** is
a. leave b. repeat c. die

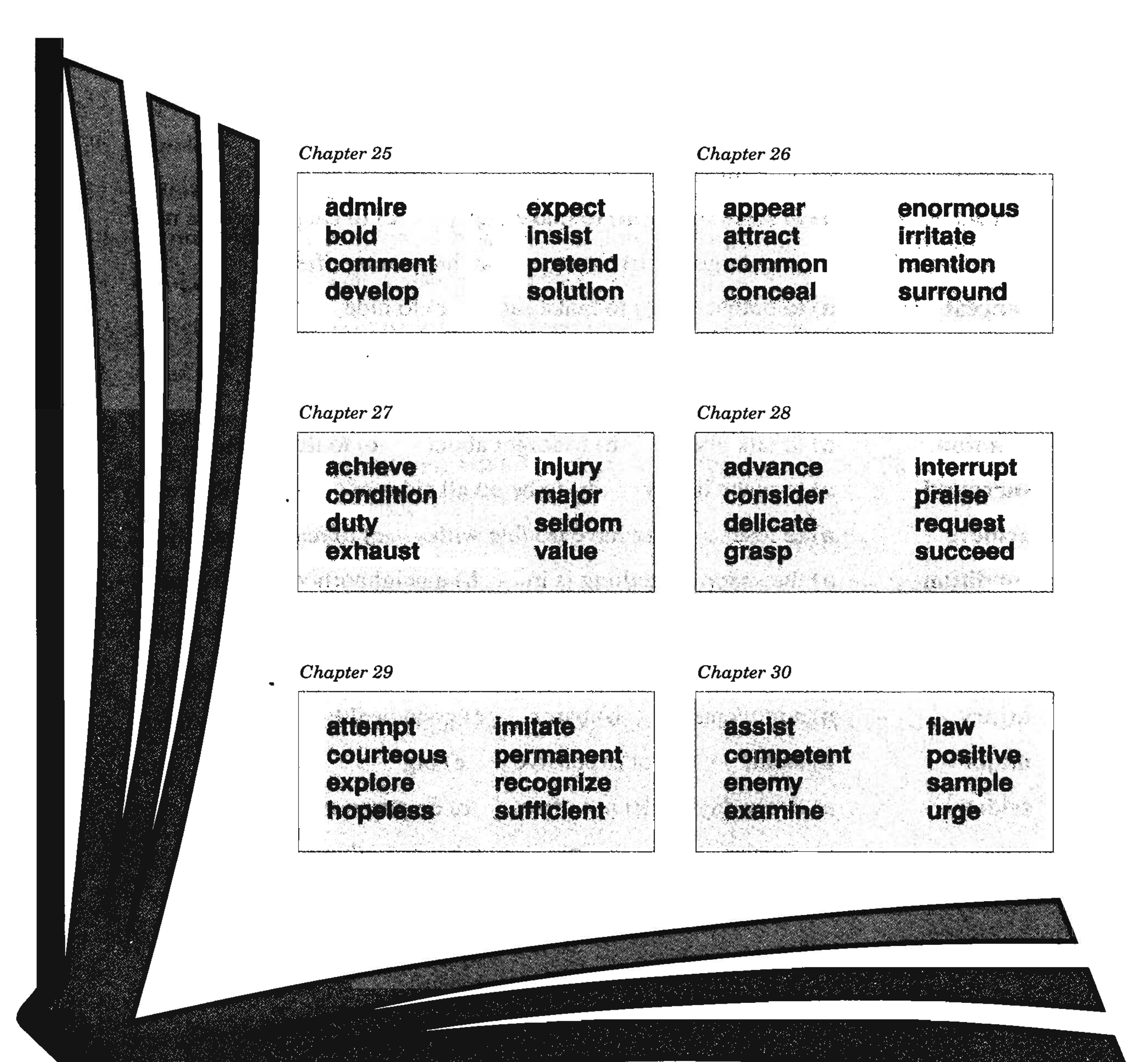
____23. The opposite of **unite** is
a. keep apart b. watch c. stay

____24. The opposite of **weary** is
a. very small b. full of energy c. wanting to talk

Scores	Part A (Same Meanings) ______%	Part B (Opposite Meanings) ______%

Number right in each part: 12 = 100%, 11 = 92%, 10 = 83%, 9 = 75%, 8 = 67%; 7 = 58%, 6 = 50%, 5 = 42%; 4 = 33%, 3 = 25%. 2 = 17%, 1 = 8%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

Unit Five


Chapter 25
admire
bold
comment
develop
expect
insist
pretend
solution
Chapter 26
appear
attract
common
conceal
enormous
irritate
mention
surround
Chapter 27
achieve
condition
duty
exhaust
injury
major
seldom
value
Chapter 28
advance
consider
delicate
grasp
interrupt
praise
request
succeed
Chapter 29
attempt
courteous
explore
hopeless
imitate
permanent
recognize
sufficient
Chapter 30
assist
competent
enemy
examine
flaw
positive
sample
urge

UNIT FIVE: Pretest

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **admire** a) to laugh at b) to think highly of c) to forget

____ 2. **bold** a) afraid b) cruel c) brave

____ 3. **comment** a) something that is said or written b) a wrong answer c) a law

____ 4. **develop** a) to grow a little at a time b) to leave c) to dry

____ 5. **expect** a) to dislike b) to want c) to believe something will happen

____ 6. **insist** a) to make believe b) to get close to someone c) to say very strongly

____ 7. **pretend** a) to make believe b) to grow c) to know

____ 8. **solution** a) a reason for doing something b) a question c) an answer to a problem

____ 9. **appear** a) to seem b) to think c) to dislike

____ 10. **attract** a) to scare off b) to make angry c) to cause to come near

____ 11. **common** a) very large b) strange c) happening often

____ 12. **conceal** a) to bother b) to make sad c) to hide

____ 13. **enormous** a) very small b) very large c) very good-looking

____ 14. **irritate** a) to help b) to calm down c) to bother

____ 15. **mention** a) to talk about b) to forget about c) to think about

____ 16. **surround** a) to make happy b) to be on all sides of c) to move away from

____ 17. **achieve** a) to lose b) to have trouble with c) to reach a goal

____ 18. **condition** a) the shape something is in b) a neighborhood c) news

____ 19. **duty** a) a job b) a hobby c) a problem

____ 20. **exhaust** a) to make happy b) to make strong c) to make tired

____ 21. **injury** a) a movement b) harm c) good health

____ 22. **major** a) small b) not expensive c) big

____ 23. **seldom** a) every day b) not often c) on purpose

____ 24. **value** a) a reason b) a color c) what something is worth

(Continues on next page

____ 25. **advance** **a)** to stop moving **b)** to move forward **c)** to move away

____ 26. **consider** **a)** to cover up **b)** to think about **c)** to want

____ 27. **delicate** **a)** good to eat **b)** strong **c)** easily broken

____ 28. **grasp** **a)** to grab **b)** to slap **c)** to drop

____ 29. **interrupt** **a)** to calm **b)** to help **c)** to stop for a short time

____ 30. **praise** **a)** to leave alone **b)** to dislike **c)** to say good things about

____ 31. **request** **a)** a problem **b)** an answer **c)** something that is asked for

____ 32. **succeed** **a)** to do badly **b)** to do well **c)** to pay too much

____ 33. **attempt** **a)** to repeat **b)** to try **c)** to remember

____ 34. **courteous** **a)** silly **b)** frightened **c)** polite

____ 35. **explore** **a)** to travel around **b)** to lose **c)** to be afraid of

____ 36. **hopeless** **a)** happy **b)** without hope **c)** tired

____ 37. **imitate** **a)** to see **b)** to hide **c)** to copy

____ 38. **permanent** **a)** good **b)** new **c)** long-lasting

____ 39. **recognize** **a)** to know from before **b)** to study **c)** to lose

____ 40. **sufficient** **a)** expensive **b)** too much **c)** enough

____ 41. **assist** **a)** to find **b)** to look at carefully **c)** to help

____ 42. **competent** **a)** dangerous **b)** good at something **c)** boring

____ 43. **enemy** **a)** someone who is perfect **b)** someone who is liked
c) someone who is hated

____ 44. **examine** **a)** to leave **b)** to use **c)** to look at carefully

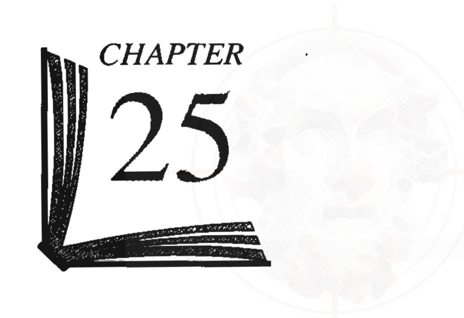
____ 45. **flaw** **a)** something wrong **b)** a good part **c)** good looks

____ 46. **positive** **a)** sad **b)** healthy **c)** hopeful

____ 47. **sample** **a)** a picture **b)** a small amount **c)** a sale

____ 48. **urge** **a)** a strong dislike **b)** a great fear **c)** a strong wish

***SCORE*:** (Number correct ________ × 2) + 4 = __________ %





admire	**expect**
bold	**insist**
comment	**pretend**
develop	**solution**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 admire
/əd'maɪə(r)/
– verb

- Kids often think highly of athletes and musicians. It's too bad they don't **admire** their teachers as much.
- People **admired** the woman who went into the burning house to save a child.

___*Admire* means a. laugh at b. look up to c. forget

2 bold
/bəʊld/
– adjective

- Since she is so frightened of roaches, Katherine thinks that anyone who kills them is **bold**.
- In the movie, the **bold** hero fights off purple monsters from outer space.

___*Bold* means a. afraid b. cruel c. brave

3 comment
/'kɒment/
– noun

- My coach's **comment** about how well I played in the soccer game made me feel proud and happy. He said, "Great job!"
- The newspapers had nothing but bad **comments** about the latest action movie.

___*Comment* means a. something that is said b. answer c. spelling

4 develop
/dɪ'veləp/
– verb

- If you don't take care of a cold, it can **develop** into something worse.
- The ugly weed in our garden **developed** into a beautiful flower by the end of the summer.

___*Develop* means a. grow b. leave c. dry

5 expect
/ɪk'spekt/
– verb

- Since my sister never remembers my birthday, I **expect** that she will forget it again this year.
- After hearing the weather report, we **expected** the storm to last all night, but it cleared up after fifteen minutes.

___*Expect* means a. dislike very much b. want c. believe something will happen

6 insist
/ɪnˈsɪst/
– verb

- If friends are at my home around supper time, my mother will always **insist** they stay for dinner.
- Even though she looked sick, Renee **insisted** that she felt fine.

___*Insist* means a. make believe b. remind someone c. say very strongly

7 pretend
/prɪˈtend/
– verb

- Actors in a play **pretend** to be people they are not.
- I **pretended** to be pleased with the sweater that Uncle Fred gave me, but I really thought it was ugly.

___*Pretend* means a. make believe b. grow c. know

8 solution
/səˈluːʃən/
– noun

- Our problem is that we have twenty guests and only five chairs. The best **solution** is to have everyone sit on the floor.
- The **solution** to this week's crossword puzzle will be printed in next week's newspaper.

___*Solution* means a. reason b. question c. answer

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ______________________ To say something very strongly
2. ______________________ To think something will probably happen
3. ______________________ To act in a false way in order to fool someone; to make believe
4. ______________________ Not afraid
5. ______________________ An answer to a problem
6. ______________________ To grow little by little; to become
7. ______________________ To think highly of someone
8. ______________________ A statement that shows what a person thinks or feels

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **admire**	c. **comments**	e. **expected**	g. **pretended**
b. **bold**	d. **developed**	f. **insisted**	h. **solution**

________________ 1. When the police officer stopped me, I ___ not to know I was going too fast.

________________ 2. I felt ___ the day I told my boss I wanted a raise.

________________ 3. The math teacher asked, "Who can give me the ___ to problem number four?"

________________ 4. I ___ Gina for standing up to the bully who was teasing her.

________________ 5. After the superhighway was built nearby, the sleepy little town ___ into a very busy city.

________________ 6. Darrell's girlfriend ___ a bracelet for her birthday but got an engagement ring instead.

________________ 7. Part of the fun of watching sports on TV is listening to the announcer's ___.

________________ 8. The angry customer ___ that she had been overcharged.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **admire**	c. **comments**	e. **expect**	g. **pretends**
b. **bold**	d. **developed**	f. **insist**	h. **solutions**

________________ 1–2. Marvin ___ to like people but makes mean ___ about them behind
________________ their backs.

________________ 3–4. I ___ the way that Joe and Lisa have worked to find ___ to their
________________ marriage problems.

________________ 5–6. Although Ralph was a shy, frightened child, he has ___ into a ___
________________ adult who seems afraid of nothing.

________________ 7–8. When I ___ company to come, I ___ that the children help me clean
________________ the apartment.

inal Check

. A Surprising Change

ead the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each ord once.

a. **bold**	b. **developed**	c. **pretended**	d. **solution**

When I was a little girl, I had a neighbor named Nina, who was a very shy child. She used to hide behind her mother when she met someone new. In school, she never raised her hand to give answers. She would not even answer when the math teacher called on her for the (1)________________ to a problem. If Nina had to speak in front of the class, she (2)________________ to be sick and went to the nurse's office instead. When we were in fifth grade, Nina's family moved to another town. I didn't see her for many years. But when I met her again not long ago, I was surprised. Nina had (3)________________ from a shy little girl into a completely different adult. She has a good job selling beauty supplies to hair salons. She goes from salon to salon, showing shop owners the latest shampoos and hair colors. She is not a bit timid° anymore. Today, I would call Nina a (4)________________, outgoing woman. Isn't it surprising how much a person can change?

. Just for Fun

ead the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each ord once.

a. **admire**	b. **comment**	c. **expect**	d. **insisted**

Roberto and Maria went to look at new cars last Saturday. They asked their friend Anita to go along. "I didn't know you were getting a new car!" she said.

"We aren't," said Maria. "We don't (5)________________ to buy anything."

"Then why are you going?" Anita asked.

Roberto tried to explain. "It's fun to look at new cars, even when you can't buy one," he said. "We like to (6)________________ the new models and the new colors."

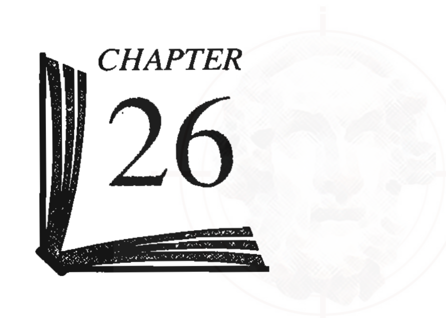
"Well, that sounds silly to me. It can't be any fun to look at things you can't buy," Anita said.

"Oh, but it is fun!" Maria (7)________________. "You should come with us and see."

But Maria could not persuade° Anita to go, so Maria and Roberto went alone. Later in the day, Roberto made a (8)________________ to Maria. He said, "I'm glad that you and I don't take life as seriously as Anita. Who cares if we can't buy a new car today? Spending the day together and daydreaming about the cars we would like to own is a great way to have fun."

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ______%	Final Check ______%
	Sentence Check 2 ______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.



CHAPTER 26



appear	**enormous**
attract	**irritate**
common	**mention**
conceal	**surround**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 appear
/əˈpɪə(r)/
– verb

- My grandmother taught me not to judge people too quickly. Things are often not as they **appear**, she said.
- When John received the yellow tie with purple polka dots, he **appeared** happy, but I knew better.

___*Appear* means   a. look   b. think   c. dislike

2 attract
/əˈtrækt/
– verb

- The sticky soda can on the floor started to **attract** ants.
- The music from the ice-cream truck **attracted** children from the whole neighborhood.

___*Attract* means   a. scare off   b. make angry   c. cause to come near

3 common
/ˈkɒmən/
– adjective

- The cold is so **common** that it makes millions of Americans miss work each year.
- Dogs used to be the country's most **common** pet, but today cats seem to be everyone's favorite.

___*Common* means   a. very large   b. strange   c. usual

4 conceal
/kənˈsiːl/
– verb

- The thief wore a mask to **conceal** his face.
- I **concealed** my little brother's birthday present by burying it under a pile of clothes in his closet.

___*Conceal* means   a. bother   b. make sad   c. hide

5 enormous
/ɪˈnɔːməs/
– adjective

- Joe's car is so **enormous** that he often has trouble finding a big enough parking space.
- Far bigger than elephants, the most **enormous** land animals ever to walk on Earth were dinosaurs.

___*Enormous* means   a. very small   b. very large   c. very good-looking

6 irritate
/ˈɪrɪteɪt/
– verb

- When James plays his new drums, the loud sounds he makes **irritate** the whole neighborhood.
- I **irritated** my boss when I didn't get to work on time and didn't call to say I would be late.

___*Irritate* means a. help b. calm down c. bother

7 mention
/ˈmenʃən/
– verb

- I must not **mention** the surprise party to anyone at work. No one there can keep a secret.
- When Mrs. Ortiz talks to friends, she often **mentions** her brother, a well-known writer. She is very proud of him.

___*Mention* means a. talk about b. forget about c. think about

8 surround
/səˈraʊnd/
– verb

- Piles of books and paper **surround** Eliza when she studies for exams.
- Like sharks, the TV reporters **surrounded** the couple so they could not move away and then asked them how they felt about the death of their children.

___*Surround* means a. make happy b. be all around c. move away from

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ________________ To speak briefly about someone or something; to refer to
2. ________________ Happening or seen often; widespread; usual
3. ________________ To bother or annoy someone; to cause someone to be angry
4. ________________ To be on all sides of someone or something
5. ________________ To cause someone or something to come near
6. ________________ To seem
7. ________________ To hide someone or something; to put out of sight; to keep out of view
8. ________________ Very large; huge

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **appeared**	c. **common**	e. **enormous**	g. **mentioned**
b. **attract**	d. **conceal**	f. **irritate**	h. **surrounded**

________________ 1. The hamburger was so ___ that, served with cheese and bacon, it had more fat than one person should eat in a whole week.

________________ 2. The actors in the high-school play ___ to be unsure about their lines.

________________ 3. Sally loves butterflies, so she plants flowers that ___ them.

________________ 4. When I ___ my wish to get a puppy, my landlord shook his head and said he did not want dogs in the building.

________________ 5. Carlos wore a hat to ___ his new haircut from the rest of the world.

________________ 6. The best-liked and most ___ flavors of ice cream are vanilla and chocolate.

________________ 7. My roommates ___ me when they leave dirty dishes and half-eaten food on the kitchen table.

________________ 8. Three dogs ___ the tree, barking at the cat sitting on a high branch overhead.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **appeared**	c. **common**	e. **enormous**	g. **mentioned**
b. **attracted**	d. **concealed**	f. **irritates**	h. **surrounded**

____
________________ 1–2. When the burglars saw that they were ___ by police, they dropped the jewelry they had ___ in their clothing.

____
________________ 3–4. A ___, everyday problem that really ___ me is drivers' keeping their radios on so loud that my house shakes as they pass by.

____
________________ 5–6. The ___ sign on the side of the road ___ many people to the opening of the new mall.

____
________________ 7–8. When I ___ a new job opening at the place where I work, Pilar ___ to be very interested.

Final Check

A. Little Lies

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **appear**	b. **common**	c. **conceal**	d. **mention**

If telling lies is wrong, why is it so (1)____________________? One reason is that lying just a little bit makes it easier for people to talk to each other. When people meet for the first time, they often ask, "How are you?" even if they don't care. Such a question makes them (2)________________________ interested and friendly. And no matter how angry or sad we feel, most of us answer, "I'm fine, thanks." Such social lies (3)________________________ things we would rather not talk about and help keep conversations moving along. Another reason people lie is to be kind to others. Let's say someone you know gets a new haircut that you think looks terrible. You might act as though you did not see the haircut and not (4)_______________________ it at all. Or just to be nice, you might make a comment° such as, "I like your new haircut." In other words, even though we are taught as children that lying is wrong, sometimes it can be easier — and kinder — not to tell the whole truth.

B. Rudeness at the Movies

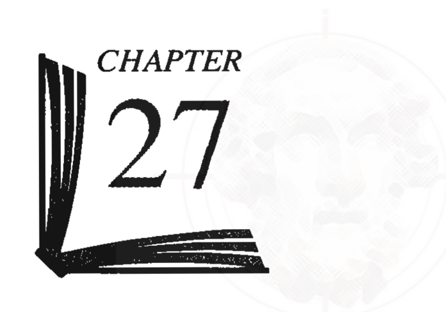
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **attract**	b. **enormous**	c. **irritate**	d. **surround**

Most people like being scared, at least a little. After all, that is why movies with monsters or creepy ghosts (5)___________________________ millions of people into theaters each year. But sometimes the strangest things in the theater are not on screen. Instead, they are the people sitting next to you or behind you. For example, whenever I see a movie, there are always several rude people nearby who (6)____________________ me by talking throughout the entire film. And do they speak about the movie? Never. They talk about an argument they had with a friend, a great party they went to, or their plans for later, when the movie is over. And if that isn't bad enough, the tallest person in the theater always chooses to sit right in front of me, blocking my view. I move this way and that, trying to see around the (7)_________________________ person in front of me. Then the people behind me get mad, start kicking the back of my seat, and yell at me to stop moving around so much. At this point, I begin to think that the reason these people come to the movies is not to see the movies. No, their real purpose° is to bother me. So when I go to a scary movie, I become afraid — not of monsters or of ghosts — but of the strange human beings that (8)________________________ me in the theater.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 _______%	Final Check _______%
	Sentence Check 2 _______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.



achieve	**injury**
condition	**major**
duty	**seldom**
exhaust	**value**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 achieve
/ə'tʃi:v/
– verb

- In order to **achieve** their dreams of doing well in school, students must work hard and study every day.
- Sandra is a hard worker — I know that she will **achieve** great success in whatever she decides to do.

___*Achieve* means   a. lose   b. have trouble with   c. reach

2 condition
/kən'dɪʃən/
– noun

- After we fixed the broken steps and painted the shutters, the outside of the house was in good **condition**.
- With its flat tire and missing seat, the bike was in poor **condition**.

___*Condition* means   a. shape something is in   b. neighborhood   c. news

3 duty
/'dju:tɪ/
– noun

- My dog thinks it is his **duty** to guard the house from any living thing — including me!
- When I was in grade school, my teacher gave me the **duty** of cleaning the chalkboard every day.

___*Duty* means   a. job   b. hobby   c. problem

4 exhaust
/ɪg'zɔ:st/
– verb

- People who don't get enough sleep can **exhaust** themselves so much that they get sick.
- Jody works so hard that just watching her **exhausts** me.

___*Exhaust* means   a. make happy   b. make strong   c. make tired

5 injury
/'ɪndʒərɪ/
– noun

- The doctors used an x-ray machine to get a better look at Anne's ankle **injury**.
- Thanks to seat belts and air bags, people may have bad car accidents and still walk away without serious **injury**.

___*Injury* means   a. movement   b. harm   c. good health

6 major
/ˈmeɪdʒə(r)/
– adjective

- TV programs are sometimes stopped so that a **major** news story can be reported.
- The Lees are planning **major** repairs on their house, including putting on a new roof.

___ *Major* means a. small b. not expensive c. big

7 seldom
/ˈseldəm/
– adverb

- Because foxes hunt at night, people **seldom** see these beautiful animals.
- An excellent employee is **seldom** late for work.

___ *Seldom* means a. every day b. not often c. on purpose

8 value
/ˈvæljuː/
– noun

- This ring was not expensive, but it has a lot of **value** to me because it was a gift from my great-grandmother.
- The thieves stole the painting from the museum because the painting had great **value**.

___ *Value* means a. reason b. color c. worth

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ____________ The state or shape that something or someone is in
2. ____________ Harm, often to the body
3. ____________ Not often
4. ____________ Something that someone has to do
5. ____________ The worth of something — in money or in importance
6. ____________ Important; large
7. ____________ To reach a goal, often after hard work or difficulty
8. ____________ To cause someone to become very tired

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **achieved**	c. **duty**	e. **injury**	g. **seldom**
b. **condition**	d. **exhausted**	f. **major**	h. **value**

________ 1. Covered with broken bottles and other trash, the park was in bad ___.

________ 2. Believe it or not, but a strong sneeze can cause ___ to the back and neck.

________ 3. My parents raised me to feel it is my ___ to help those in need.

________ 4. Angie needs a lot of sleep, so she ___ stays up past 10 p.m.

________ 5. Our school swimming team ___ first place in the statewide contest.

________ 6. Their house cost fifteen thousand dollars in 1975, but its ___ has gone up greatly since then.

________ 7. School was called off because of a ___ snowstorm.

________ 8. Lifting heavy loads all day in the hot sun ___ Warren, who was not used to such hard work.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **achieved**	c. **duty**	e. **injury**	g. **seldom**
b. **condition**	d. **exhaust**	f. **major**	h. **value**

____
________ 1–2. Because Juanita is careful to warm up before she runs, she ___ gets a painful ___ like a pulled muscle.

____
________ 3–4. Before a party, my neighbors ___ themselves trying to make their home look perfect. That is silly. Their good health has more ___ than a neat home.

____
________ 5–6. It is a pet owner's ___ to make sure pets get the shots they need to protect them against ___ illnesses.

____
________ 7–8. Malik and Thea bought an old, rundown house. Two years later, they had ___ their goal of fixing all the problems so that the house was in good ___.

Final Check

A. The Truth About Drinking

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **achieve**	b. **conditions**	c. **injury**	d. **major**

"This one's for you!" "I love you, man." "It's a light beer for a heavy world." These are some of the lines used in beer ads on TV. Ads like these make drinking seem fun and good. They make young people begin to think that drinking is a way for them to (1)____________ happiness and success. These ads are not honest about the problems that drinking can cause. They never show the sickness, sadness, and loss of a job that are the real (2)____________ of many people who drink heavily. The ads never show someone dealing with a serious (3)____________ caused by a drunk driver. The ads never mention° the families broken up because of the violence of a person who drinks too much alcohol. In short, these flashy ads do not tell the truth about the (4)____________ difficulties that alcohol causes for people all over the world.

B. A Life Out of Balance

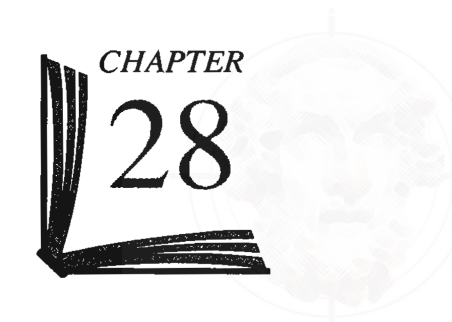
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **duty**	b. **exhausts**	c. **seldom**	d. **value**

Being lazy is not a good thing. However, constant° work is not good either. Jerome is an example of someone who never stops working. He works so hard at his job that he (5)____________ himself. When he is at home, he is always fixing something in the house or working in the yard. Jerome loves his wife and children. He takes his (6)____________ to be a good husband and father very seriously. The problem is that Jerome (7)____________ spends any time with his family. He is always too busy working. Jerome knows the (8)____________ of hard work. Sadly, he does not understand that spending time with his family is worth a lot, too.

Scores	Sentence Check 1	______%	Final Check	______%
	Sentence Check 2	______%		

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





advance	**interrupt**
consider	**praise**
delicate	**request**
grasp	**succeed**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 **advance**
/əd'vɑːns/
– verb

- If our baseball team wins tonight, we will **advance** to first place.
- We watched as the dark clouds **advanced** toward us.

___*Advance* means a. stop moving b. move forward c. move away

2 **consider**
/kən'sɪdə(r)/
– verb

- If you **consider** the problem much longer, you will not have time to do anything about it.
- When he goes to a restaurant, Jeffrey carefully **considers** everything on the menu before ordering.

___*Consider* means a. cover up b. think about c. want

3 **delicate**
/'delɪkət/
– adjective

- Mom's crystal plates are so **delicate** that we use them only for very special family dinners.
- Because infants' bones are **delicate**, babies should be handled gently.

___*Delicate* means a. light in color b. strong c. hurt easily

4 **grasp**
/grɑːsp/
– verb

- When people are learning to drive, they often **grasp** the steering wheel tightly.
- With large smiles on their faces, the children **grasped** the ice-cream cones and started eating right away.

___*Grasp* means a. grab b. slap c. drop

5 **interrupt**
/ˌɪntə'rʌpt/
– verb

- Dad gets angry when phone calls **interrupt** our dinner.
- Fran often **interrupts** the teacher with silly questions.

___*Interrupt* means a. calm b. help c. stop for a short time

6 **praise**
/preɪz/
– verb

- Most people in town **praise** our hard-working new mayor.
- My sister **praises** the new science-fiction series on TV, but I don't like it at all.

___*Praise* means a. leave alone b. dislike c. say good things about

7 **request**
/rɪˈkwest/
– noun

- You may borrow my car, but I have one **request**: Please fill the gas tank before you return the car to me.
- The singer took **requests** from people wanting to hear their favorite songs.

___*Request* means a. problem b. answer c. something that is asked for

8 **succeed**
/səkˈsiːd/
– verb

- It takes both hard work and luck to **succeed** in show business.
- On his third try, Jason **succeeded** in passing his driver's test.

___*Succeed* means a. do badly b. do well c. pay too much

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ________________ To grab something and hold it tightly
2. ________________ To do well at something
3. ________________ To move forward or ahead
4. ________________ To say good things about someone or something
5. ________________ Easily broken
6. ________________ To stop something for a time
7. ________________ Something that someone is asked to do
8. ________________ To think carefully about something

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **advanced**	c. **delicate**	e. **interrupted**	g. **request**
b. **considered**	d. **grasped**	f. **praised**	h. **succeeding**

______________ 1. The movers packed the ___ crystal glasses inside soft tissue paper to keep them from breaking.

______________ 2. Kim ___ the job offer for a few days before deciding to accept it.

______________ 3. The librarian made a strange ___. He asked the students to make as much noise as possible.

______________ 4. With one hand, the hero ___ the young boy and pulled him away from the giant shark.

______________ 5. A rainstorm ___ the ball game for fifteen minutes.

______________ 6. The art teacher ___ Ethan's beautiful drawing.

______________ 7. Each day, the soldiers packed up their supplies and ___ further into the northern countries.

______________ 8. Joan must be ___ at her new job. She has already gotten a big raise.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **advanced**	c. **delicate**	e. **interrupted**	g. **request**
b. **considered**	d. **grasp**	f. **praised**	h. **succeeded**

______________ 1–2. I reminded my children that they shouldn't ___ the kitten as if it were a toy. Its bones are ___ and could break.
____

______________ 3–4. Before speaking to the group, I carefully ___ what I wanted to say and then ___ to the front of the room.
____

______________ 5–6. When the little girl finally ___ in tying her shoelaces, her parents ___ her warmly.
____

______________ 7–8. The teacher ___ my report with the ___ that I speak more loudly.
____

Final Check

A. Animals Were First

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **advance**	b. **delicate**	c. **grasp**	d. **succeeded**

Many animals walked the Earth long before humans. The best-known of these animals were the dinosaurs. Some dinosaurs were enormous° and scary. When these big animals hunted, they would (1)________________ slowly, (2)________________ the hunted animal in their sharp claws, and tear it to pieces. But not all dinosaurs were this big. Some were the size of today's chickens. These small animals hunted for the eggs of other dinosaurs. With their pointy teeth, they would crack the (3)________________ shells they found and eat the tasty juices inside them. And their size made it easy for them to run away quickly from larger animals. Dinosaurs of all sizes died out millions of years ago. Scientists have come up with different reasons why dinosaurs stopped walking the Earth. But no one knows for sure what happened. However, some animals from several million years ago (4)________________ in living from those times until now. For example, the snakes, turtles, and crocodiles of today are almost exactly like the ones that lived in the time of the dinosaurs.

B. Call Waiting — Oh, No!

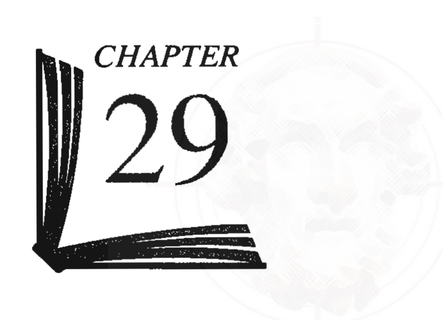
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **considered**	b. **interrupt**	c. **praise**	d. **request**

Have you ever (5)________________ buying an answering machine or getting "call waiting"? Let me tell you what I think about these inventions. I used to hate telephone answering machines. I felt nervous talking to a machine. When I heard the (6)________________ "Please start talking after you hear the beep," I forgot what I wanted to say. But I have gotten over my fears and do not hate answering machines anymore. I can even (7)________________ them as being useful. After all, they do permit° people to pass along information even when nobody is able to answer the phone. However, I will never stop hating call waiting. Talking to people who have call waiting drives me crazy. When they hear the little beep that tells them someone else is calling, they (8)________________ our conversation and say, "Just a minute, please. I'll see who's calling and come right back." I am left holding onto the phone, thinking, "Why is the other person who called more important than I am?" To me, "call waiting" really means "I am *left* waiting."

Scores	Sentence Check 1	______%	Final Check	______%
	Sentence Check 2	______%		

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.





attempt	**imitate**
courteous	**permanent**
explore	**recognize**
hopeless	**sufficient**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 attempt
/ə'tempt/
– verb

- Don't **attempt** to ski without first taking lessons.
- Many climbers have **attempted** to reach the top of Mount Everest, but few have made it.

___*Attempt* means   a. repeat   b. try   c. remember

2 courteous
/'kɜːtjəs/
– adjective

- It was **courteous** of you to give your seat to the old gentleman.
- When the spinach was passed, the **courteous** little girl said "No, thank you," but her rude brother said "Yuck!"

___*Courteous* means   a. silly   b. frightened   c. thoughtful

3 explore
/ɪk'splɔː(r)/
– verb

- In the years ahead, humans will **explore** the planet Mars and possibly even live there.
- Our new kitten **explored** every inch of the apartment before deciding where to sleep.

___*Explore* means   a. search   b. lose   c. fear

4 hopeless
/'həʊplɪs/
– adjective

- When the flood washed away their homes and everything they owned, the people in town felt **hopeless**.
- When my neighbor lost his job and wasn't able to pay his bills, he began to feel **hopeless**.

___*Hopeless* means   a. happy   b. without hope   c. tired

5 imitate
/'ɪmɪteɪt/
– verb

- Because Rosa looks up to her big brother so much, she tries to **imitate** the way he walks and talks.
- It's best just to be yourself and not try to **imitate** anyone else.

___*Imitate* means   a. see   b. hide   c. copy

6 permanent
/ˈpɜːmənənt/
– adjective

- Kate did not want a **permanent** job; she wanted one that lasted only for the summer.
- When Bruce colored his hair green for Halloween, he didn't know the color was **permanent**. He thought it would wash out.

___*Permanent* means a. good b. new c. long-lasting

7 recognize
/ˈrekəgnaɪz/
– verb

- After not seeing your cousin for two years, do you think you will **recognize** her? Or have you forgotten how she looks?
- Jake **recognized** his neighbor immediately, even though she had lost a lot of weight.

___*Recognize* means a. know from before b. not like c. lose

8 sufficient
/səˈfɪʃənt/
– adjective

- Do you have **sufficient** gas in the tank to drive home, or should we stop at the gas station?
- There is **sufficient** chicken for dinner tonight and for leftovers tomorrow night.

___*Sufficient* means a. expensive b. too much c. enough

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ______________________ To try hard to do something; to make an effort
2. ______________________ Lasting a long time
3. ______________________ Believing that things will turn out badly; having no hope
4. ______________________ To copy how someone else behaves; to act like someone else
5. ______________________ Enough; as much as is needed
6. ______________________ To travel around a new, unknown place to see what it is like
7. ______________________ To know someone or something from an earlier time
8. ______________________ Polite; having good manners

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **attempts**	c. **explored**	e. **imitate**	g. **recognizes**
b. **courteous**	d. **hopeless**	f. **permanent**	h. **sufficient**

________ 1. My dog doesn't bark when I drive into the garage because she ___ the sound of my car.

________ 2. I get upset when I see my children ___ the violence they see in movies.

________ 3. Seeing all the difficulty I was having with my packages, the ___ clerk offered to help me carry them.

________ 4. Before they chose a place to camp, the hikers ___ the woods to find the best spot.

________ 5. Jeffrey and Linda bought a house together, so I guess they think their relationship will be ___.

________ 6. I have ___ cash to pay for my movie ticket and yours, too.

________ 7. Even though the class is hard for her, Luisa ___ to do her best.

________ 8. The lost hikers felt ___ when they couldn't find their way back to camp.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **attempted**	c. **explore**	e. **imitating**	g. **recognize**
b. **courteous**	d. **hopeless**	f. **permanent**	h. **sufficient**

____
________ 1–2. You may feel very sad and even ___ if you think that your problems are ___ and will never change.

____
________ 3–4. I was pleased when my bossy little boy began ___ the kind and ___ ways of his uncle.

____
________ 5–6. Several hours is not ___ time to ___ a large city like Chicago; you need to spend at least two full days.

____
________ 7–8. Everyone at the Halloween party wore a costume, so it was hard to see who was who. We ___ to ___ our friends by their height and voices.

Final Check

A. A Cab Driver for Now

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **attempted**	b. **courteous**	c. **permanent**	d. **recognized**

As soon as James drove his taxi up to the curb, he (1)____________________ the man in the expensive suit. It was the guy who never gave him a good tip. Even so, James was (2)____________________ — he asked, "May I take your bags?" and opened the cab door for the man. During the ride, James (3)____________________ to have a friendly talk, but the man said nothing in return. "Oh well," James said to himself. "That's OK." In his heart, James knew that driving a cab was not going to be (4)____________________. From the time he was little, James had loved getting up in front of people. He had starred in every play his schools had put on — from grade school through high school. Being the center of attention made him happy. Deep down, James felt that he had the talent° needed to become a movie and TV star. And when he became rich and famous, James promised himself, he would always be friendly to cab drivers — and leave them a big tip!

B. Thoughts at the Mall

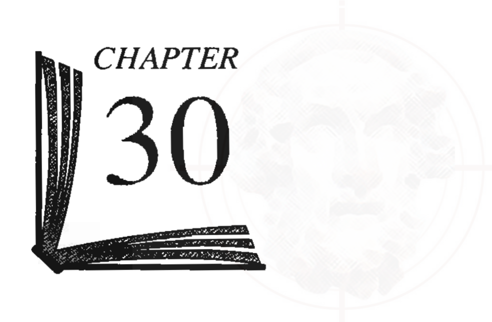
Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **explore**	b. **hopeless**	c. **imitate**	d. **sufficient**

On Sunday afternoons, I often (5)____________________ one of the nearby shopping malls. I enjoy eating in the food court and looking at all the people. It always makes me laugh to see the middle-school kids pretending° they are all grown-up. They dress the same as older kids and even (6)____________________ the ways that high school kids talk. Most of all, though, when I am at the mall, I love to shop. But no matter how much money I bring, it is never (7)____________________ for all the things I'd like to buy. In fact, I know that I will *never* have enough money to own everything I would like. That could make me feel sad, even (8)____________________. But I don't let it. I know that no amount of money will buy what is really important: family and friends, health, and happiness. So I buy only those things I really need and forget the rest. Life is too short to worry about what you don't have.

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ________%	Final Check ________%
	Sentence Check 2 ________%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.



CHAPTER 30



assist	**flaw**
competent	**positive**
enemy	**sample**
examine	**urge**

Eight Words in Context

In the space at the left, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the other words (the *context*) in each sentence to help you figure out the word's meaning.

1 assist
/əˈsɪst/
– verb

- Seeing-eye dogs are trained to **assist** people who have problems with sight.
- Neighbors and friends **assisted** the family whose house had burned down by giving them food, clothes, and money.

___*Assist* means a. find b. look at carefully c. help

2 competent
/ˈkɒmpɪtənt/
– adjective

- After seeing him burn several pieces of toast, I knew that Aya was far from being a **competent** cook.
- Sandra is not good at tennis, but she is a **competent** skater.

___*Competent* means a. dangerous b. skillful c. boring

3 enemy
/ˈenəmɪ/
– noun

- Even though Bob and I are friends, his dog growls at me as though I am an **enemy**.
- In the science-fiction movie I saw last night, the **enemy** of the human race is a large, purple monster that eats people.

___*Enemy* means a. someone who is perfect b. someone who is liked c. someone who is hated

4 examine
/ɪgˈzæmɪn/
– verb

- In the supermarket, shoppers **examine** the fruit and vegetables to make sure they are fresh.
- The airline **examined** the airplane that crashed to find out what had caused the accident.

___*Examine* means a. leave b. use c. look at carefully

5 flaw
/flɔː/
– noun

- Because the sweater has a **flaw**, I was able to buy it at a really good price.
- No one is perfect. Everyone has **flaws**.

___*Flaw* means a. something wrong b. good part c. good looks

6 **positive**
/ˈpɒzətɪv/
– adjective

- Part of a coach's job is to keep members of the team feeling **positive**, even when they are not winning.
- Myra is a **positive** person who always look on the bright side.

___*Positive* means a. sad b. healthy c. hopeful

7 **sample**
/ˈsɑːmpl/
– noun

- The doctor took a **sample** of Jen's blood for testing.
- Before we painted the living room, we brought home **samples** of three different colors.

___*Sample* means a. picture b. little bit c. large amount

8 **urge**
/ɜːdʒ/
– noun

- As she walked past a beauty salon, Lola felt a sudden **urge** to color her hair bright red.
- After lying around all day, I got the **urge** to go out running.

___*Urge* means a. dislike b. fear c. strong wish

Matching Words with Definitions

Here are the meanings, or *definitions*, of the eight new words. Write each word next to its meaning. The sentences above and on the facing page will help you decide on the meaning of each word.

1. ______________________ To look at carefully
2. ______________________ Cheerful; upbeat; sure of oneself
3. ______________________ A sudden desire to do something
4. ______________________ Being good at something; able to do something well; skilled
5. ______________________ A problem or fault that keeps something from being perfect
6. ______________________ To help
7. ______________________ Someone whom one hates and wishes to harm
8. ______________________ A small part of something that shows what the whole is like

CAUTION: Don't go any further until you know the answers above are correct. Then you can use the meanings to help you in the following activities. After a while, you will know the words so well that you won't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **assisted**	c. **enemies**	e. **flaws**	g. **samples**
b. **competent**	d. **examined**	f. **positive**	h. **urge**

__________ 1. Max felt an ___ to surprise his boyhood friend, whom he hadn't seen in years, with a phone call.

__________ 2. Guards at the department store worked with the police and ___ them in the search for the shoplifter.

__________ 3. We returned two dishes to the store because several of them had small ___ we had not seen when we bought them.

__________ 4. When someone is killed, the police always ask friends and family if the murdered person had any ___.

__________ 5. Studies show that people with a ___ view of life are healthier than people who always look on the bad side.

__________ 6. Lonnie ___ the wrapped gift closely, trying to guess what was inside.

__________ 7. Some ice-cream stores give customers ___ of their flavors to taste.

__________ 8. After drinking alcohol, even a ___ driver is unsafe behind the wheel.

Sentence Check 2

Complete each item below by writing **two** words from the box on the answer lines at the left. Use each word once.

a. **assist**	c. **enemy**	e. **flaws**	g. **sample**
b. **competent**	d. **examined**	f. **positive**	h. **urge**

____
__________ 1–2. Because the word "used" was stamped on the cover of the book, I ___ its pages closely. Since I found no ___, I went ahead and bought the book.

____
__________ 3–4. During wartime, people can be arrested if they ___ someone who is believed to be the ___.

____
__________ 5–6. When Brenda and Trisha ran for club president, I found it hard to decide who should get my vote. Both are hard-working and ___. I finally chose Brenda because she has such a ___, upbeat way about her.

____
__________ 7–8. Watching her father eat a hot-fudge sundae, Anita felt a strong ___ to eat ice cream and asked her father for a ___ of his.

Final Check

A. The Birth of the American Red Cross

Read the following paragraph carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **assist**	b. **enemy**	c. **examined**	d. **positive**

Clara Barton was a nurse who lived during the American Civil War (1861–1865). She knew what happened to soldiers during war. When they received an injury° from a bullet or knife, they had to lie on the battlefield until the battle was over. By then, many of them had bled to death. Because Clara wanted to (1)__________________ the soldiers, she asked to go to the battlefield while the fighting was still going on. The officer in charge said no. But Clara did not take "no" for an answer. Instead of thinking nothing could be done for the soldiers, Clara was (2)__________________. She said that many of them could be saved if she could just get to them. After listening to her, the officer decided to let her go. She and her nurses then worked day and night to help the hurt soldiers. They (3)__________________ their wounds, gave them medicine, and used a cart pulled by horses to take them to a hospital. The nurses did not care which side the men fought for. To them, no man was an (4)__________________. They were all just human beings who needed help. After the war was over, Clara started the American Red Cross. The Red Cross helps people during wartime. But it does much more. When there is an earthquake, a flood, or a fire, the Red Cross is there to help. And it is all because of Clara Barton.

B. To Spank or Not to Spank?

Read the following paragraphs carefully. Then fill in each blank with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **competent**	b. **flaw**	c. **sample**	d. **urge**

Do you think children should be spanked? Whenever a (5)__________________ of adults is asked that question, there are many different answers. Some people say that children need to be spanked in order to learn to be good. Others say there is a (6)__________________ in that idea. They say that all spanking does is teach kids to hit those who are smaller and weaker. They also say that spanked children don't really learn to be good — they simply learn to be afraid of spanking.

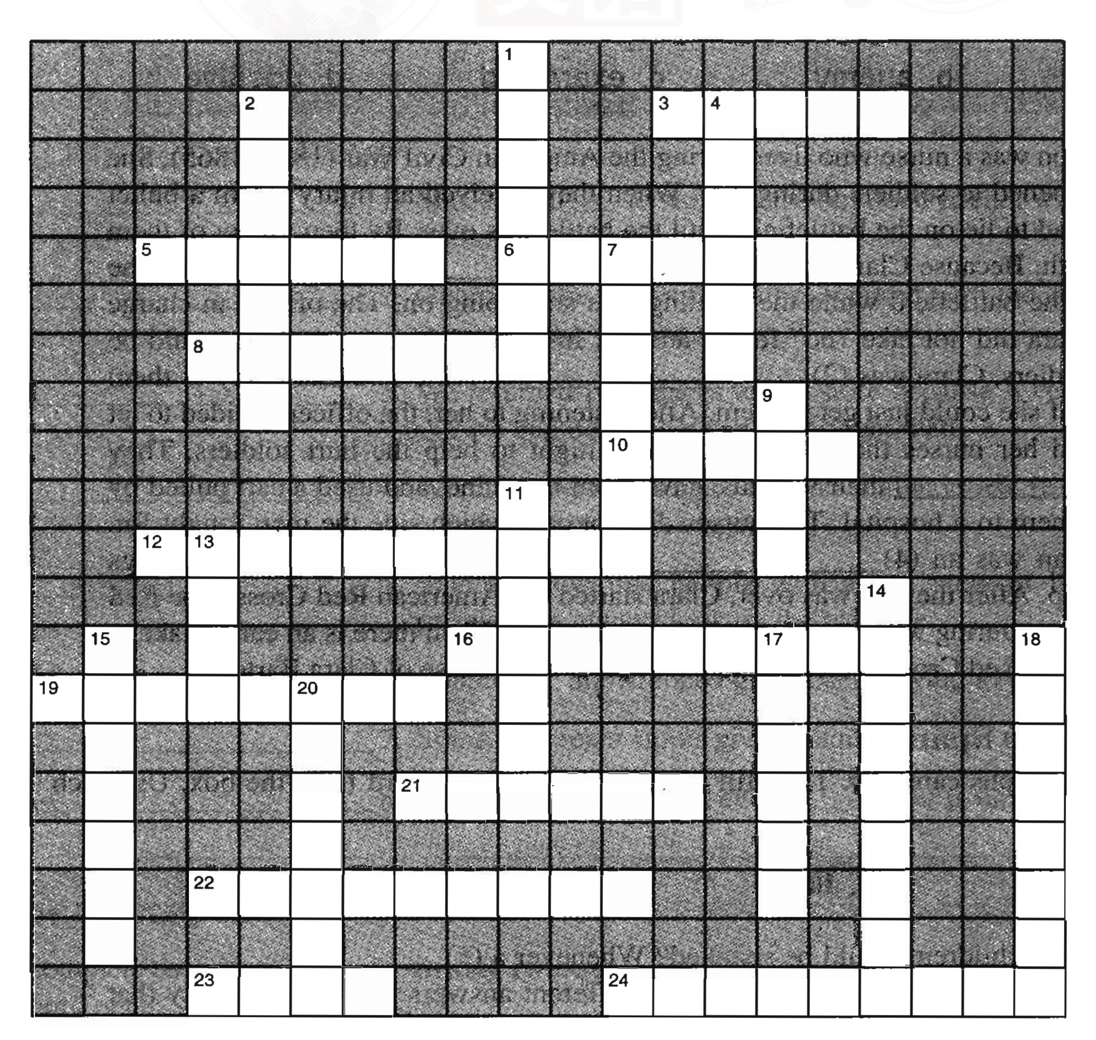
People who believe in spanking say that children who are not spanked always expect° to get what they want. Others say that (7)__________________ parents find better ways to teach kids how to behave. For example, when such parents feel the (8)__________________ to spank a child who is behaving badly, they take a few minutes to cool down. Then they do one or more of the following: talk to the child about why the behavior was wrong, take away the child's favorite toy, keep the child from watching TV, or make the child take "time out" in his or her room. What do you think? Do you think these ideas work as well as spanking?

Scores	Sentence Check 1 ______%	Final Check ______%
	Sentence Check 2 ______%	

Number right: 8 = 100%, 7 = 88%, 6 = 75%, 5 = 63%, 4 = 50%, 3 = 38%, 2 = 25%, 1 = 13%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT FIVE: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-four words from Unit Five. Using the meanings at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.



admire
attempt
bold
comment
condition
courteous
develop
duty
examine
exhaust
expect
explore
hopeless
injury
major
permanent
pretend
recognize
seldom
solution
succeed
sufficient
urge
value

ACROSS

3. The worth of something — in money or importance
5. Not often
6. To look at carefully
8. To act in a false way in order to fool someone; to make believe
10. Important; large
12. Enough; as much as is needed
16. To know someone or something from an earlier time
19. Believing that things will turn out badly
21. To think something will probably happen
22. Polite; having good manners
23. Something that someone has to do
24. The state or shape that something or someone is in

DOWN

1. To do well at something
2. To travel around a new, unknown place to see what it is like
4. To think highly of someone
7. To try hard to do something; to make an effort
9. Not afraid
11. To grow little by little; to become
13. A sudden desire to do something
14. Lasting a long time
15. A statement that shows what a person thinks or feels
17. Harm, often to the body
18. An answer to a problem
20. To cause someone to become very tired

UNIT FIVE: Test 1

On the answer line at the left, write the word that best completes each item.

_______________ 1. I went to the jewelry store in the mall to see if the ring I found on the street had any ___.

a. duty b. value c. comment

_______________ 2. The first time Wanda ___ to ice skate, she fell down and broke her wrist.

a. mentioned b. attempted c. requested

_______________ 3. What started as a small argument between two people ___ into a large fight with dozens of people getting hurt.

a. developed b. explored c. pretended

_______________ 4. All of us ___ Gina because she does so well in school.

a. admire b. interrupt c. conceal

_______________ 5. My long hours at work ___ me so much that all I want to do on the weekend is sleep.

a. appear b. exhaust c. achieve

_______________ 6. Tanya's little sister ___ the new book tightly with both hands and said, "I love stories."

a. insisted b. grasped c. achieved

_______________ 7. Ben did not ask for help, but when we saw how much work he had to do, we chose to ___ him.

a. examine b. imitate c. assist

_______________ 8. Although the old house needed a fresh coat of paint, overall it was in pretty good ___.

a. condition b. solution c. flaw

_______________ 9. When the rain turned to ice, there were several ___ accidents on the turnpike.

a. positive b. major c. courteous

_______________ 10. Though twenty years had passed since the two old friends had been together, they ___ each other right away at the grocery store.

a. recognized b. imitated c. exhausted

_______________ 11. The rock group ___ so many people that the streets near the concert hall were filled with cars.

a. attracted b. considered c. examined

_______________ 12. I looked for a job for weeks but had no luck. In the beginning, I felt ___, but then then my mood improved.

a. hopeless b. bold c. enormous

(Continues on next page)

_______ 13. Joseph ___ several neighborhoods before deciding where he wanted to live.

a. developed b. achieved c. explored

_______ 14. At first, I didn't have the ___ to eat anything. But then I smelled the chocolate chip cookies baking in the oven, and I wanted to eat every single one of them.

a. urge b. solution c. duty

_______ 15. You need to ___ other people's feelings or you may say something that hurts someone badly.

a. interrupt b. attempt c. consider

_______ 16. My grandparents have never needed or asked for help. But they did make one ___ the other day. They asked if I could help them clean their basement.

a. flaw b. injury c. request

_______ 17. Last winter, the flu was so ___ that several schools and businesses closed their doors because so many people were sick.

a. seldom b. common c. delicate

_______ 18. Even a tiny ___ in the wing of an airplane can cause the plane to crash.

a. flaw b. sample c. comment

_______ 19. After listening to Sheila's ___ about how bad the new movie was, I changed my mind and decided to see something else.

a. solution b. condition c. comment

_______ 20. Greg ___ Janetta to say "no" when he asked her out on a date. He was happily surprised when she said "yes."

a. expected b. imitated c. recognized

_______ 21. We were planning a surprise birthday party for Troy on Saturday night. All that day, we ___ that we did not know it was his birthday.

a. requested b. achieved c. pretended

_______ 22. Malik's sleep was ___ by the loud sound of hail smashing against his bedroom window.

a. interrupted b. concealed c. assisted

_______ 23. In just a few hours, the ___ blizzard brought more than two feet of snow to the city.

a. permanent b. delicate c. enormous

_______ 24. It wasn't until the party was almost over that Carlos ___ that he was moving to another state.

a. attempted b. mentioned c. examined

Score (Number correct × 4) + 4 = ________%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT FIVE: Test 2

PART A

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **achieved**	d. **competent**	g. **enemies**	j. **permanent**
b. **advancing**	e. **courteous**	h. **injury**	k. **praised**
c. **appears**	f. **duties**	i. **irritated**	l. **sufficient**

________________ 1. The slow service and poor food ___ Mr. and Mrs. Shahad so much that they complained to the restaurant manager.

________________ 2. Because Lonnie is such a ___ student, his teacher asked him if he would like to tutor several younger children.

________________ 3. It took a lot of practice, but Andrea finally ___ her goal. She beat her older brother at a game of basketball.

________________ 4. By saving her money for several months, Julia had ___ cash to buy the leather jacket she wanted.

________________ 5. Although Rodney and Samuel were ___ in grade school, they are best friends today.

________________ 6. In this light, my new jacket ___ to be gray, but it is really blue.

________________ 7. The police were surprised that the Sung family walked away without a single ___ from the three-car accident.

________________ 8. At a picnic, you have to eat quickly if you want to beat the army of ants that is ___ toward your food.

________________ 9. Children behave better when they are ___ and not yelled at and scolded all the time.

________________ 10. Even when customers are rude, Keisha tries hard to be ___ and friendly.

________________ 11. Sara and Peter know their relationship is ___ and will last forever.

________________ 12. Phil likes working at the movie theater, but he strongly dislikes one of his ___ — picking up the trash that others leave behind.

(Continues on next page)

PART B

Complete each item below by writing one word from the box on the answer line at the left. Use each word once.

a. **bold**	d. **examined**	g. **positive**	j. **solution**
b. **concealed**	e. **imitates**	h. **sample**	k. **succeeded**
c. **delicate**	f. **insisted**	i. **seldom**	l. **surround**

________________ 13. Jim gets such a nice, ___ feeling from cooking for others that he has decided to work several hours a week in a soup kitchen for the homeless.

________________ 14. We didn't plan to eat dinner at my grandparents' house, but my grandmother ___ that we stay.

________________ 15. With two jobs and two night classes, Chen ___ has time to relax.

________________ 16. Tamika was the only one in class who found the ___ to the math problem.

________________ 17. After they ___ the scene of the crime, the police were able to figure out how many people had robbed our apartment.

________________ 18. My sister ___ the mess in her room by hiding it under her bed.

________________ 19. Although he was nervous about passing the test, Harry ___ in getting his driver's license on the first try.

________________ 20. Brightly colored flowers and a pretty white fence ___ the home of my dreams.

________________ 21. John tried a ___ of Sandra's peanut butter pound cake. He liked it so much that he ate two big slices and took another slice home to enjoy later.

________________ 22. A butterfly's wings are so ___ that they tear very easily.

________________ 23. My little sister often teases me when I am angry. She repeats every word I say and ___ the way I act.

________________ 24. Some people thought Mario's plan to chase the bear away from the tent was brave and ___, but I thought it was stupid.

Scores	Part A (Adding a Word)	_______%	Part B (Adding a Word)	_______%

Number right in each part: 12 = 100%, 11 = 92%, 10 = 83%, 9 = 75%, 8 = 67%; 7 = 58%, 6 = 50%, 5 = 42%; 4 = 33%, 3 = 25%. 2 = 17%, 1 = 8%

Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT FIVE: Test 3

PART A

In the space at the left, write the letter of the choice that has the **same** meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

___ 1. If storm clouds are **advancing**, they are
a. moving forward. b. breaking up.
c. moving away.

___ 2. Your coworkers **appear** to be happy when they learn you got a raise. They
a. are very unhappy with the news. b. seem pleased with the news.
c. do not believe the news.

___ 3. If the smell of your dinner **attracts** your cats, the smell
a. makes them come near you. b. makes them run away from you.
c. makes them sleepy.

___ 4. If you **conceal** a secret from your friends, you
a. tell them the secret. b. keep the secret hidden and don't tell it.
c. hear them tell you the secret.

___ 5. When you **examine** a menu in a restaurant, you
a. wave it in the air, as if to get rid of a fly. b. pay no attention to it.
c. look at it carefully to see what you want to order.

___ 6. If a day at work **exhausts** you, it
a. makes you feel very tired. b. gives you energy.
c. disappoints you.

___ 7. If you get an **injury** while you are on vacation, you have gotten
a. a present for someone. b. a lot of rest.
c. some sort of harm to the body.

___ 8. If the phone **interrupts** you while you are studying, it
a. rings once and then is quiet. b. is quiet and lets you work.
c. stops you from doing your work for a while.

___ 9. If you get a **permanent** stain on your shirt, the stain will
a. wash away easily. b. stay there forever.
c. wash away over a period of time.

___10. If you **recognize** several classmates from fifth grade, that means that you
a. like them. b. remember them from your school days.
c. forget who they are.

___11. Someone who has a **sample** of a new kind of ice cream
a. has a taste of the ice cream. b. dislikes the ice cream.
c. has a big box of the ice cream.

(Continues on next page)

___12. A person who **seldom** makes a mistake
a. makes mistakes all the time. b. hardly ever makes a mistake.
c. never makes a mistake.

PART B

In the space at the left, write the letter of the choice that is the **opposite** of the **boldfaced** word.

___ 13. The opposite of **admire** is
a. be sure of b. talk about c. think badly of

___ 14. The opposite of **bold** is
a. angry b. silly c. scared

___ 15. The opposite of **delicate** is
a. old b. new c. strong

___ 16. The opposite of **enemy** is
a. student b. friend c. stranger

___ 17. The opposite of **enormous** is
a. pretty b. warm c. small

___ 18. The opposite of **grasp** is
a. let go b. smile c. shake

___ 19. The opposite of **hopeless** is
a. feeling sad b. looking forward to something c. wanting to be honest

___ 20. The opposite of **irritate** is
a. make happy b. forget c. ask

___ 21. The opposite of **positive** is
a. excited b. sad c. straight

___ 22. The opposite of **succeed** is
a. fail b. act c. win

___ 23. The opposite of **sufficient** is
a. not enough b. not boring c. not expensive

___ 24. The opposite of **solution** is
a. thought b. problem c. warning

Scores Part A (Same Meanings) ______% Part B (Opposite Meanings) ______%

Number right in each part: 12 = 100%, 11 = 92%, 10 = 83%, 9 = 75%, 8 = 67%; 7 = 58%, 6 = 50%, 5 = 42%; 4 = 33%, 3 = 25%. 2 = 17%, 1 = 8%
Enter your scores above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

POSTTEST OF THE WHOLE BOOK

This test contains 100 items. In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. If you **produce** something, you: **a)** take it **b)** break it **c)** make it

____ 2. An **event** is: **a)** a special skill **b)** a problem **c)** something that happens

____ 3. If something is **precious**, it: **a)** is not important **b)** has great value **c)** is funny

____ 4. **Claim** means: **a)** to hide **b)** to forget to say **c)** to say something is true

____ 5. To **satisfy** is to: **a)** make unhappy **b)** be enough for **c)** surprise

____ 6. A **cautious** person is: **a)** careful **b)** tired **c)** happy

____ 7. **Contain** means: **a)** to make **b)** to have inside **c)** to dislike

____ 8. If you are **uncertain**, you are: **a)** not sure **b)** not interested **c)** sure

____ 9. **Effort** means: **a)** good looks **b)** sadness **c)** hard work

____ 10. Something that is **effective** is: **a)** slow **b)** good **c)** late

____ 11. Something that is **common**: **a)** happens often **b)** is strange **c)** is very large

____ 12. **Condition** means: **a)** news **b)** a neighborhood **c)** the shape something is in

____ 13. To **develop** means: **a)** to leave **b)** to grow a little at a time **c)** to dry

____ 14. Your **duty** is your: **a)** hobby **b)** job **c)** problem

____ 15. To **pretend** is to: **a)** know **b)** grow **c)** make believe

____ 16. A good **excuse** is a good: **a)** time **b)** reason **c)** question

____ 17. A **sociable** person is: **a)** quiet **b)** angry **c)** friendly

____ 18. If something is **modern**, it is: **a)** strong **b)** broken down **c)** up-to-date

____ 19. If you **ignore** something, you: **a)** need it **b)** pay no attention to it **c)** know it

____ 20. If you **avoid** something, you: **a)** get closer to it **b)** enjoy it **c)** keep away from it

____ 21. **Damage** means: **a)** harm **b)** safety **c)** hard work

____ 22. Someone who is **capable**: **a)** is not ready **b)** is not careful **c)** has skill

____ 23. If you **require** something, you: **a)** need it **b)** do without it **c)** send it away

____ 24. An **opportunity** is: **a)** a habit **b)** a chance **c)** a problem

____ 25. If you are **sensitive**, you are: **a)** understanding **b)** happy **c)** not caring

(Continues on next page)

_____ 26. To **refuse** means: a) to want to b) to forget about c) to decide not to

_____ 27. **Humor** is: a) a lesson b) something funny c) anger

_____ 28. Someone who is **stubborn**: a) does not want to do something b) is easy to get along with c) is quick to learn

_____ 29. To **increase** means: a) to make smaller b) to get rid of c) to make greate

_____ 30. **Progress** is: a) friends b) movement toward a goal c) mistakes

_____ 31. If you **succeed**, you: a) pay too much b) do badly c) do well

_____ 32. To **examine** means: a) to look at carefully b) to use c) to leave

_____ 33. To **recognize** is to: a) lose b) study c) know from before

_____ 34. The **value** of something is: a) what it is worth b) its color c) the reason for it

_____ 35. If something **seldom** happens, it: a) happens every day b) happens on purpose c) does not happen often

_____ 36. To **persist** means: a) to keep doing something b) to give up easily c) to forget

_____ 37. Something **insulting** is: a) kind b) hurtful c) easy to understand

_____ 38. If you are **comfortable**, you are: a) thirsty b) mean c) relaxed

_____ 39. **Allow** means: a) to stop b) to let c) to hate

_____ 40. **Inspire** means: a) to stop someone from doing something b) to make someone want to do something c) to make someone afraid to do something

_____ 41. If you **prevent** something, you: a) give it away b) stop it ahead of time c) help it

_____ 42. Something that is **available** is: a) boring b) easy to get c) expensive

_____ 43. A **portion** is: a) a part of something b) nothing c) all of something

_____ 44. When you **arrange** things, you: a) mix them up b) put them in order c) buy them

_____ 45. If you **depend** on people, you: a) turn away from them b) wait for them c) rely on the

_____ 46. **Necessary** means: a) very important b) careful c) not wanted

_____ 47. **Defeat** means: a) to keep b) to beat in a contest c) to hide

_____ 48. If you **regret** something, you: a) are thankful for it b) feel bad about it c) are nervous about it

_____ 49. An **opinion** is: a) a job b) a need c) a thought

_____ 50. **Encourage** means: a) to give hope to b) to shout at angrily c) to stop

(Continues on next page)

___ 51. **Ability** means: a) a special skill b) a feeling of thanks c) a wish

___ 52. If you **devour** something, you: a) make it b) save it for later c) eat it quickly

___ 53. Something that is **constant** is: a) never-ending b) sad c) quiet

___ 54. **Gratitude** means: a) anger b) worry c) thanks

___ 55. A **struggle** is: a) a difficult time b) an easy time c) a boring time

___ 56. A **detail** is: a) a color b) a small part c) the end of something

___ 57. **Persuade** means: a) to stop b) to get someone to do something c) to leave

___ 58. To **occupy** something means: a) to break it b) to live in it c) to clean it

___ 59. To **realize** is to: a) know b) hope c) write

___ 60. If you **separate** things, you: a) put them in different places b) make them larger c) bring them together

___ 61. To **collapse** means: a) to build b) to fall down c) to stay safe

___ 62. When you are **relieved**, you are: a) less worried b) not caring c) unhappy

___ 63. Things that are **similar** are: a) not safe b) like each other c) good-looking

___ 64. **Confusion** is: a) a feeling of not knowing what to do b) a feeling of danger c) a feeling of peace

___ 65. Something that is **distant** is: a) nearby b) different c) far away

___ 66. Something **negative** is: a) interesting b) nice c) bad

___ 67. **Tension** is: a) rest b) a nervous feeling c) happiness

___ 68. The **conclusion** of something is: a) the first part b) the best part c) the last part

___ 69. A **volunteer** is: a) a paid worker b) a worker who is not paid c) a bad worker

___ 70. Someone who is **fortunate** is: a) lucky b) scared c) sorry

___ 71. **Confident** people are: a) sure of themselves b) honest c) mean

___ 72. To **donate** something is to: a) find it b) give it away c) show it off

___ 73. If something **disgusts** you, it: a) makes you happy b) keeps you busy c) makes you sick

___ 74. **Advice** is: a) a friendship b) a helpful idea c) a mistake

___ 75. If something is **impossible**, it: a) is safe b) cannot happen c) happens all the time

(Continues on next page)

_____ 76. If you **consider** something, you: a) think about it b) cover it up c) want it

_____ 77. To **admire** means: a) to laugh at b) to forget c) to think highly of

_____ 78. If you **attempt** something, you: a) try it b) repeat it c) remember it

_____ 79. A **solution** is: a) a question b) an answer to a problem c) a reason for doing something

_____ 80. If you **achieve** something, you: a) reach a goal b) have trouble with it c) lose it

_____ 81. An **agreement** is: a) a question b) an understanding c) a fight

_____ 82. A **curious** person is: a) full of questions b) angry c) not interested

_____ 83. To **prepare** means: a) to watch b) to get ready c) to leave

_____ 84. If you **suggest** something, you: a) offer an idea b) forget it c) are afraid of it

_____ 85. To **entertain** means: a) to change b) to make happy c) to make sleepy

_____ 86. Something that is **permanent** is: a) long-lasting b) new c) good

_____ 87. An **injury** is: a) something that hurts b) a movement c) good healt

_____ 88. If you **expect** something, you: a) want it b) believe it will happen c) dislike it

_____ 89. Someone who is **competent** is: a) dangerous b) boring c) good at something

_____ 90. A **request** is a: a) problem b) thing that is asked for c) answer

_____ 91. A **generous** person is: a) bad-tempered b) selfish c) willing to share

_____ 92. If you **select** something, you: a) lose it b) choose it c) break it

_____ 93. Something that is **scarce** is: a) few in number b) famous c) easily found

_____ 94. **Imagine** means: a) to forget b) to picture in the mind c) to say something nice

_____ 95. Something **familiar** is: a) well-known b) far away c) sad

_____ 96. Something **definite** is: a) wrong b) not fair c) certain

_____ 97. **Specific** means: a) exact b) boring c) future

_____ 98. If you are **motivated**, you are: a) good-looking b) well-known c) interested and excited

_____ 99. To **suspect** is to: a) think b) put away c) hope

_____100. An **occasion** is: a) a car b) a boring time c) a special time

STOP. This is the end of the test. If there is time remaining, you may go back and recheck your answers. When the time is up, hand in both your answer sheet and this test booklet to your instructor.

Appendixes



A Answer Key

1. Answers to the Pretest of the Whole Book

1. c	2. c	3. a	4. c
5. c	6. b	7. c	8. a
9. c	10. c	11. a	12. b
13. a	14. a	15. c	16. a
17. b	18. a	19. c	20. b
21. b	22. b	23. a	24. b
25. c	26. a	27. b	28. a
29. b	30. c	31. c	32. a
33. c	34. c	35. c	36. b
37. c	38. a	39. b	40. b
41. c	42. c	43. b	44. a
45. b	46. c	47. a	48. a
49. a	50. c	51. a	52. b
53. c	54. c	55. b	56. c
57. c	58. c	59. a	60. c
61. c	62. c	63. c	64. b
65. b	66. a	67. c	68. b
69. b	70. c	71. a	72. c
73. c	74. a	75. b	76. b
77. a	78. c	79. b	80. c
81. c	82. a	83. a	84. a
85. a	86. c	87. b	88. c
89. b	90. c	91. b	92. c
93. a	94. c	95. b	96. b
97. b	98. b	99. c	100. c

2. Answers to the Unit Pretests

Unit One	Unit Two	Unit Three	Unit Four	Unit Five
Pretest	*Pretest*	*Pretest*	*Pretest*	*Pretest*
1. c	1. c	1. a	1. a	1. b
2. b	2. a	2. c	2. c	2. c
3. c	3. b	3. c	3. b	3. a
4. b	4. c	4. a	4. a	4. a
5. a	5. b	5. b	5. b	5. c
6. a	6. a	6. a	6. c	6. c
7. a	7. b	7. a	7. c	7. a
8. c	8. c	8. c	8. a	8. c
9. a	9. b	9. b	9. b	9. a
10. c	10. b	10. c	10. a	10. c
11. b	11. c	11. a	11. b	11. c
12. c	12. c	12. c	12. c	12. c
13. b	13. a	13. b	13. a	13. b
14. c	14. b	14. a	14. b	14. c
15. a	15. c	15. a	15. a	15. a
16. c	16. c	16. c	16. a	16. b
17. b	17. b	17. a	17. c	17. c
18. a	18. a	18. c	18. a	18. a
19. a	19. b	19. a	19. b	19. a
20. c	20. c	20. b	20. a	20. c
21. b	21. c	21. b	21. c	21. b
22. c	22. a	22. c	22. c	22. c
23. b	23. b	23. b	23. b	23. b
24. c	24. c	24. a	24. c	24. c
25. b	25. c	25. c	25. a	25. b
26. a	26. b	26. c	26. c	26. b
27. c	27. b	27. b	27. a	27. c
28. c	28. a	28. c	28. b	28. a
29. c	29. c	29. a	29. b	29. c
30. a	30. b	30. b	30. c	30. c
31. c	31. c	31. a	31. c	31. c
32. a	32. a	32. c	32. a	32. b
33. a	33. a	33. c	33. b	33. b
34. c	34. b	34. b	34. c	34. c
35. a	35. c	35. a	35. c	35. a
36. b	36. c	36. a	36. a	36. b
37. c	37. c	37. c	37. c	37. c
38. c	38. b	38. b	38. a	38. c
39. a	39. c	39. b	39. c	39. a
40. c	40. a	40. c	40. c	40. c
41. a	41. b	41. a	41. b	41. c
42. c	42. a	42. c	42. c	42. b
43. b	43. c	43. b	43. a	43. c
44. a	44. c	44. c	44. b	44. c
45. b	45. b	45. c	45. a	45. a
46. c	46. b	46. a	46. c	46. c
47. a	47. c	47. c	47. a	47. b
48. c	48. a	48. b	48. a	48. c

3. Answers to the Chapter Activities

Chapter 1 (The Nose Knows; Barbie: A Bad Example?)

Eight Words in Context		Matching Words with Definitions		Sentence Check 1		Sentence Check 2	Final Check	
1. c	5. a	1. 2	5. 7	1. a	5. e	1–2. h, e	1. a	5. d
2. b	6. a	2. 5	6. 6	2. b	6. f	3–4. a, d	2. c	6. c
3. c	7. a	3. 8	7. 3	3. c	7. d	5–6. c, b	3. b	7. a
4. b	8. c	4. 4	8. 1	4. g	8. h	7–8. g, f	4. d	8. b

Chapter 2 (Feeling Blue; A Late Love Letter)

Eight Words in Context		Matching Words with Definitions		Sentence Check 1		Sentence Check 2	Final Check	
1. c	5. b	1. 5	5. 7	1. h	5. f	1–2. a, h	1. d	5. c
2. c	6. c	2. 3	6. 6	2. g	6. d	3–4. c, e	2. c	6. d
3. b	7. a	3. 4	7. 8	3. a	7. e	5–6. d, b	3. a	7. a
4. c	8. c	4. 1	8. 2	4. c	8. b	7–8. f, g	4. b	8. b

Chapter 3 (Ads That Lie; Horrible Hiccups!)

Eight Words in Context		Matching Words with Definitions		Sentence Check 1		Sentence Check 2	Final Check	
1. b	5. b	1. 6	5. 4	1. e	5. g	1–2. g, d	1. c	5. c
2. a	6. c	2. 8	6. 1	2. c	6. h	3–4. f, a	2. a	6. a
3. a	7. b	3. 7	7. 3	3. b	7. d	5–6. c, e	3. b	7. b
4. c	8. c	4. 5	8. 2	4. a	8. f	7–8. b, h	4. d	8. d

Chapter 4 (An Upsetting Dream; A King's Mistake)

Eight Words in Context		Matching Words with Definitions		Sentence Check 1		Sentence Check 2	Final Check	
1. b	5. c	1. 5	5. 6	1. a	5. d	1–2. a, f	1. c	5. b
2. a	6. a	2. 7	6. 4	2. f	6. g	3–4. c, g	2. d	6. d
3. c	7. c	3. 8	7. 3	3. c	7. h	5–6. e, b	3. a	7. c
4. c	8. a	4. 1	8. 2	4. e	8. b	7–8. d, h	4. b	8. a

Chapter 5 (Be Proud of Your Age!; Making Anger Work for You)

Eight Words in Context		Matching Words with Definitions		Sentence Check 1		Sentence Check 2	Final Check	
1. a	5. c	1. 5	5. 1	1. d	5. c	1–2. a, f	1. c	5. a
2. c	6. c	2. 8	6. 7	2. a	6. h	3–4. e, g	2. b	6. c
3. a	7. a	3. 2	7. 4	3. e	7. g	5–6. h, c	3. d	7. b
4. b	8. c	4. 3	8. 6	4. b	8. f	7–8. d, b	4. a	8. d

Chapter 6 (How Not to Treat Customers; Stuck in the Middle)

Eight Words in Context		Matching Words with Definitions		Sentence Check 1		Sentence Check 2	Final Check	
1. a	5. b	1. 6	5. 3	1. b	5. e	1–2. f, d	1. b	5. d
2. c	6. c	2. 4	6. 8	2. d	6. a	3–4. b, a	2. c	6. b
3. b	7. a	3. 5	7. 7	3. h	7. f	5–6. h, g	3. d	7. a
4. a	8. c	4. 2	8. 1	4. c	8. g	7–8. e, c	4. a	8. c

Chapter 7 (The Joy of Ice Cream; A Noisy Apartment)

Eight Words in Context		Matching Words with Definitions		Sentence Check 1		Sentence Check 2	Final Check	
1. c	5. b	1. 4	5. 3	1. c	5. d	1–2. h, g	1. a	5. c
2. a	6. a	2. 7	6. 6	2. e	6. a	3–4. b, c	2. d	6. a
3. b	7. b	3. 1	7. 8	3. f	7. b	5–6. f, d	3. c	7. b
4. c	8. c	4. 2	8. 5	4. g	8. h	7–8. a, e	4. b	8. d

Chapter 8 (Nuts in the Senate; Calling Dr. Leech)

Eight Words in Context		Matching Words with Definitions		Sentence Check 1		Sentence Check 2	Final Check	
1. b	5. a	1. 6	5. 7	1. f	5. d	1–2. h, b	1. b	5. b
2. b	6. b	2. 3	6. 2	2. a	6. g	3–4. a, c	2. d	6. d
3. c	7. c	3. 1	7. 5	3. e	7. h	5–6. g, f	3. a	7. a
4. c	8. c	4. 8	8. 4	4. c	8. b	7–8. e, d	4. c	8. c

Chapter 9 (TV and Violence; Are You Ready for a Pet?)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. b	5. c	1. 2	5. 8	1. e	5. b	1–2. a, b	1. d	5. b
2. a	6. a	2. 5	6. 3	2. c	6. f	3–4. f, d	2. c	6. c
3. b	7. b	3. 1	7. 6	3. a	7. d	5–6. e, c	3. a	7. d
4. c	8. c	4. 7	8. 4	4. g	8. h	7–8. g, h	4. b	8. a

Chapter 10 (Help for Shy People; Not a Laughing Matter)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. c	5. c	1. 4	5. 7	1. f	5. e	1–2. d, c	1. d	5. b
2. b	6. b	2. 5	6. 1	2. b	6. c	3–4. g, b	2. a	6. a
3. b	7. c	3. 6	7. 3	3. d	7. g	5–6. e, h	3. c	7. d
4. a	8. a	4. 2	8. 8	4. a	8. h	7–8. a, f	4. b	8. c

Chapter 11 (Taking Risks; Bad Manners Hurt Everyone)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. a	5. c	1. 5	5. 4	1. c	5. h	1–2. g, h	1. a	5. a
2. b	6. b	2. 2	6. 8	2. g	6. d	3–4. e, c	2. c	6. b
3. c	7. c	3. 3	7. 1	3. b	7. f	5–6. a, f	3. b	7. c
4. c	8. a	4. 6	8. 7	4. a	8. e	7–8. d, b	4. d	8. d

Chapter 12 (Two Different Sisters; How "Honest Abe" Earned His Name)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. b	5. b	1. 6	5. 5	1. b	5. f	1–2. d, e	1. d	5. d
2. a	6. b	2. 8	6. 3	2. e	6. d	3–4. a, c	2. b	6. a
3. c	7. c	3. 1	7. 2	3. a	7. g	5–6. g, b	3. c	7. b
4. c	8. a	4. 4	8. 7	4. c	8. h	7–8. f, h	4. a	8. c

Chapter 13 (Ready to Do Well; Advertising for a Date)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. a	5. b	1. 7	5. 6	1. b	5. d	1–2. b, e	1. d	5. c
2. c	6. a	2. 3	6. 4	2. e	6. c	3–4. a, d	2. a	6. b
3. c	7. a	3. 8	7. 5	3. f	7. a	5–6. f, c	3. c	7. d
4. a	8. c	4. 1	8. 2	4. h	8. g	7–8. g, h	4. b	8. a

Chapter 14 (The Good and Bad Sides of Malls; As Good As It Looks?)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. b	5. b	1. 3	5. 7	1. c	5. h	1–2. a, f	1. c	5. b
2. c	6. a	2. 5	6. 1	2. f	6. b	3–4. g, b	2. b	6. d
3. a	7. a	3. 2	7. 8	3. a	7. d	5–6. h, c	3. d	7. a
4. c	8. c	4. 6	8. 4	4. e	8. g	7–8. e, d	4. a	8. c

Chapter 15 (A Belief in Flying; She Tries Before She Buys)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. a	5. b	1. 2	5. 7	1. d	5. h	1–2. a, c	1. a	5. a
2. c	6. c	2. 1	6. 8	2. b	6. e	3–4. d, f	2. c	6. b
3. a	7. b	3. 4	7. 6	3. a	7. c	5–6. e, g	3. b	7. c
4. b	8. a	4. 3	8. 5	4. f	8. g	7–8. b, h	4. d	8. d

Chapter 16 (Play Now, Pay Later; A Man of Many Faces)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. c	5. a	1. 6	5. 7	1. g	5. c	1–2. a, c	1. c	5. a
2. c	6. b	2. 5	6. 1	2. f	6. a	3–4. f, e	2. b	6. c
3. b	7. a	3. 4	7. 2	3. d	7. b	5–6. g, d	3. d	7. b
4. c	8. c	4. 3	8. 8	4. e	8. h	7–8. h, b	4. a	8. d

Chapter 17 **(Soaps Are for Me!; Keeping the Customer Happy)**

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. c	5. c	1. 1	5. 5	1. c	5. e	1–2. g, e	1. b	5. b
2. b	6. b	2. 4	6. 6	2. h	6. a	3–4. d, f	2. a	6. a
3. a	7. b	3. 3	7. 2	3. b	7. d	5–6. a, c	3. d	7. d
4. a	8. c	4. 8	8. 7	4. f	8. g	7–8. b, h	4. c	8. c

Chapter 18 **(A Fake "Cure"; The Jobs Everyone Hates)**

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. a	5. c	1. 6	5. 2	1. f	5. d	1–2. e, b	1. d	5. b
2. c	6. a	2. 4	6. 5	2. a	6. e	3–4. h, g	2. c	6. d
3. b	7. c	3. 1	7. 8	3. h	7. g	5–6. a, d	3. a	7. a
4. c	8. b	4. 7	8. 3	4. c	8. b	7–8. c, f	4. b	8. c

Chapter 19 **(A Young Librarian; No More Harm)**

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. a	5. b	1. 4	5. 7	1. b	5. c	1–2. e, d	1. b	5. c
2. c	6. c	2. 5	6. 2	2. f	6. h	3–4. a, h	2. a	6. a
3. b	7. c	3. 3	7. 6	3. g	7. d	5–6. c, b	3. d	7. d
4. a	8. a	4. 8	8. 1	4. a	8. e	7–8. f, g	4. c	8. b

Chapter 20 **(Is He Man or Machine?; Struck by Lightning)**

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. b	5. a	1. 4	5. 2	1. a	5. g	1–2. a, b	1. b	5. b
2. a	6. b	2. 5	6. 6	2. c	6. h	3–4. d, f	2. c	6. d
3. b	7. a	3. 3	7. 7	3. d	7. b	5–6. c, h	3. d	7. c
4. c	8. a	4. 1	8. 8	4. f	8. e	7–8. e, g	4. a	8. a

Chapter 21 **(Whose Fault Is It?; Forests Full of Life)**

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. a	5. c	1. 8	5. 1	1. e	5. b	1–2. b, g	1. c	5. a
2. a	6. c	2. 4	6. 6	2. h	6. c	3–4. h, d	2. b	6. c
3. b	7. b	3. 2	7. 3	3. d	7. f	5–6. a, f	3. d	7. b
4. a	8. c	4. 7	8. 5	4. g	8. a	7–8. e, c	4. a	8. d

Chapter 22 **(An Animal in Danger; The Simple Life of the Amish)**

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. a	5. b	1. 4	5. 1	1. a	5. f	1–2. e, a	1. b	5. d
2. c	6. c	2. 6	6. 2	2. c	6. e	3–4. c, h	2. c	6. c
3. a	7. c	3. 7	7. 3	3. d	7. g	5–6. d, f	3. a	7. b
4. b	8. a	4. 5	8. 8	4. h	8. b	7–8. b, g	4. d	8. a

Chapter 23 **(Taking a Break with TV; Working and Living Together)**

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. b	5. c	1. 2	5. 7	1. e	5. h	1–2. b, e	1. d	5. c
2. c	6. a	2. 3	6. 8	2. a	6. c	3–4. d, c	2. b	6. d
3. c	7. c	3. 5	7. 6	3. f	7. g	5–6. h, f	3. c	7. a
4. a	8. c	4. 4	8. 1	4. b	8. d	7–8. g, a	4. a	8. b

Chapter 24 **(The Horror of Hate; Taking Time for Thanks)**

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. c	5. a	1. 1	5. 5	1. d	5. b	1–2. c, b	1. b	5. c
2. c	6. c	2. 6	6. 8	2. g	6. f	3–4. e, d	2. d	6. b
3. a	7. a	3. 2	7. 4	3. e	7. a	5–6. a, h	3. c	7. d
4. b	8. a	4. 7	8. 3	4. h	8. c	7–8. f, g	4. a	8. a

Chapter 25 (A Surprising Change; Just for Fun)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. b	5. c	1. 6	5. 8	1. g	5. d	1–2. g, c	1. d	5. c
2. c	6. c	2. 5	6. 4	2. b	6. e	3–4. a, h	2. c	6. a
3. a	7. a	3. 7	7. 1	3. h	7. c	5–6. d, b	3. b	7. d
4. a	8. c	4. 2	8. 3	4. a	8. f	7–8. e, f	4. a	8. b

Chapter 26 (Little Lies; Rudeness at the Movies)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. a	5. b	1. 7	5. 2	1. e	5. d	1–2. h, d	1. b	5. a
2. c	6. c	2. 3	6. 1	2. a	6. c	3–4. c, f	2. a	6. c
3. c	7. a	3. 6	7. 4	3. b	7. f	5–6. e, b	3. c	7. b
4. c	8. b	4. 8	8. 5	4. g	8. h	7–8. g, a	4. d	8. d

Chapter 27 (The Truth About Drinking; A Life Out of Balance)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. c	5. b	1. 2	5. 8	1. b	5. a	1–2. g, e	1. a	5. b
2. a	6. c	2. 5	6. 6	2. e	6. h	3–4. d, h	2. b	6. a
3. a	7. b	3. 7	7. 1	3. c	7. f	5–6. c, f	3. c	7. c
4. c	8. c	4. 3	8. 4	4. g	8. d	7–8. a, b	4. d	8. d

Chapter 28 (Animals Were First; Call Waiting — Oh, No!)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. b	5. c	1. 4	5. 3	1. c	5. e	1–2. d, c	1. a	5. a
2. b	6. c	2. 8	6. 5	2. b	6. f	3–4. b, a	2. c	6. d
3. c	7. c	3. 1	7. 7	3. g	7. a	5–6. h, f	3. b	7. c
4. a	8. b	4. 6	8. 2	4. d	8. h	7–8. e, g	4. d	8. b

Chapter 29 (A Cab Driver for Now; Thoughts at the Mall)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. b	5. c	1. 1	5. 8	1. g	5. f	1–2. d, f	1. d	5. a
2. c	6. c	2. 6	6. 3	2. e	6. h	3–4. e, b	2. b	6. c
3. a	7. a	3. 4	7. 7	3. b	7. a	5–6. h, c	3. a	7. d
4. b	8. c	4. 5	8. 2	4. c	8. d	7–8. a, g	4. c	8. b

Chapter 30 (The Birth of the American Red Cross; To Spank or Not to Spank?)

Eight Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Final Check*	
1. c	5. a	1. 4	5. 5	1. h	5. f	1–2. d, e	1. a	5. c
2. b	6. c	2. 6	6. 1	2. a	6. d	3–4. a, c	2. d	6. b
3. c	7. b	3. 8	7. 3	3. e	7. g	5–6. b, f	3. c	7. a
4. c	8. c	4. 2	8. 7	4. c	8. b	7–8. h, g	4. b	8. d

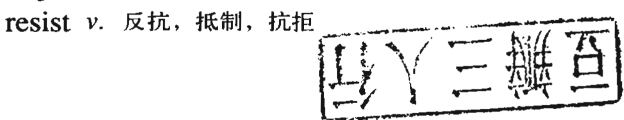
4. Answers to the Posttest of the Whole Book

1. c
2. c
3. b
4. c
5. b
6. a
7. b
8. a
9. c
10. b
11. a
12. c
13. b
14. b
15. c
16. b
17. c
18. c
19. b
20. c
21. a
22. c
23. a
24. b
25. a
26. c
27. b
28. a
29. c
30. b
31. c
32. a
33. c
34. a
35. c
36. a
37. b
38. c
39. b
40. b
41. b
42. b
43. a
44. b
45. c
46. a
47. b
48. b
49. c
50. a
51. a
52. c
53. a
54. c
55. a
56. b
57. b
58. b
59. a
60. a
61. b
62. a
63. b
64. a
65. c
66. c
67. b
68. c
69. b
70. a
71. a
72. b
73. c
74. b
75. b
76. a
77. c
78. a
79. b
80. a
81. b
82. a
83. b
84. a
85. b
86. a
87. a
88. b
89. c
90. b
91. c
92. b
93. a
94. b
95. a
96. c
97. a
98. c
99. a
100. c

B Word List

ability *n.* 能力(指体力或智力)
accuse *v.* 指责
achieve *v.* 实现，完成
admire *v.* 钦佩，赞赏，欣赏
admit *v.* 承认，供认
advance *v.* 前进，前移
advice *n.* 劝告，忠告，意见
agreement *n.* (口头或书面的)协定，协议
alarm *v.* 使惊恐，使忧虑
allow *v.* 允许，准许
amazed *adj.* 十分惊奇的，吃惊的
appear *v.* 看来好像，似乎
approach *v.* 靠近，接近
arrange *v.* 安排，排列，整理
assist *v.* 帮助，协助
attack *v.* (用武力)攻击；进攻
attempt *v.* 企图，试图
attract *v.* 吸引
available *adj.* (指物)可用或可得到的
avoid *v.* 避免，防止
aware *adj.* 意识到的，知道的
benefit *v.* 得益，得到好处
bold *adj.* 勇敢的，无畏的
cancel *v.* 取消，撤销
capable *adj.* 有能力的，有才能的，有技能的
careless *adj.* 粗心的，疏忽的，粗枝大叶的
cautious *adj.* 十分小心的，谨慎的
claim *v.* 声称，主张
collapse *v.* 倒塌，倒下
comfortable *adj.* 舒适的，(工作)轻松的
comment *n.* 评论，意见
common *adj.* 常见的，普通的，通常的
compete *v.* 比赛，竞争
competent *adj.* 有能力的，能胜任的
conceal *v.* 隐藏，掩盖
conclusion *n.* 结尾
condemn *v.* 谴责
condition *n.* 状态，状况
confident *adj.* 确信的，肯定的
confusion *n.* 辨别不清，混淆
consider *v.* 考虑，细想
constant *adj.* 不断的，连续发生的
contain *v.* 包含，容纳
continue *v.* 继续，延续
contribute *v.* 激励，鼓励
courteous *adj.* 谦恭有礼的，周到的
create *v.* 创作，创造
curious *adj.* 好奇的；好求知的
daily *adj.* 每日一次的；每日的
damage *n.* 损害，损失
damp *adj.* 潮湿的，微湿的
decrease *v.* 减少，减小
defeat *v.* 击败，战胜
defect *n.* 缺点，毛病
defend *v.* 防卫，保护，保卫
definite *adj.* 一定的，肯定的
delay *v.* 耽搁，拖延
delicate *adj.* 清淡的
depend *v.* 依靠，依赖
detail *n.* 细节，枝节
develop *v.* 形成，扩展，发展
devour *v.* 吞食，狼吞虎咽地吃
disaster *n.* 灾难，大祸
discover *v.* 找到，发觉
disgust *v.* 使作呕，使厌恶
dismiss *v.* 让…离开，解散，打发走
distant *adj.* 远离的，遥远的
distract *v.* 转移注意力，使分心
distressed *adj.* 苦恼的，忧虑的，悲伤的
donate *v.* 捐，赠
dull *adj.* 乏味的，单调的
duty *n.* 责任，本分，义务
effective *adj.* 有效的
effort *n.* 努力，勉力尝试
embarrassed *adj.* 窘的，尴尬的
embrace *v.* 拥抱，怀抱
emerge *v.* 出现，浮现，出来
emphasize *v.* 强调，着重
encourage *v.* 激励，鼓励
enemy *n.* 敌人，仇敌
enormous *adj.* 巨大的，极大的
entertain *n.* 给…娱乐；使快乐，使有兴趣
envy *v.* 妒忌，羡慕
event *n.* 发生的事情；大事
examine *v.* 仔细观察，检查
excess *adj.* 过量的，过剩的
excuse *n.* 理由，藉口
exhaust *v.* 使耗尽，使精疲力尽
expect *v.* 预计，预料
experience *n.* 经历，阅历
experiment *v.* 试用，进行实验
expert *n.* 专家，能手
explore *v.* 勘探，考察，勘查
express *v.* 表达，表露
fact *n.* 事实，真实事情
failure *n.* 失败
familiar *adj.* 熟悉的，通晓的
fascinate *v.* 强烈吸引，迷住
flaw *n.* 缺点，瑕疵
flexible *adj.* 易弯曲的，可弯曲的
fortunate *adj.* 幸运的，侥幸的
furious *adj.* 狂怒的，暴怒的
generous *adj.* 慷慨的，大方的
glance *v.* 一瞥，扫视，很快地看
glare *v.* 怒视
gradual *adj.* 渐渐的，逐渐的
grasp *v.* 抓牢，抓紧

gratitude *n.* 感激之情
grief *n.* 悲伤，悲痛
guarantee *n.* 保用，(商品)保修
helpless *adj.* 无助的
hollow *adj.* 中空的，空的
hopeless *adj.* 不抱希望的，绝望的
humble *adj.* 谦逊的，谦虚的
humor *n.* 幽默，笑话
ideal *adj.* 理想的，完美的
identify *v.* 识别；(经考虑)确定
ignore *v.* 不顾，不理，忽视
imagine *v.* 想象
imitate *v.* 模仿，仿效
impossible *adj.* 不可能的，难以置信的
incident *n.* 事故
include *v.* 包含，包括
increase *v.* 使增大，使增强，使增加
injury *n.* 损害，伤害
insist *v.* 坚持，坚决认为
inspect *v.* 检查，审视
inspire *v.* 鼓舞，激励
insulting *adj.* 侮辱的，污蔑的
intend *v.* 打算，想要，计划
intense *adj.* 强烈的，极度的
interrupt *v.* 中断，暂停
intimate *adj.* 私有的，秘密的，个人的
introduce *v.* 介绍，引荐
involve *v.* 使陷入，使卷入
irritate *v.* 激怒，使恼怒
isolate *v.* 使隔离，使孤立
labor *n.* 劳动
leisure *n.* 空闲时间，闲暇
locate *v.* 找到，查明
logical *adj.* 合乎逻辑的
loyal *adj.* 忠诚的，忠贞不渝的
major *adj.* 重大的，主要的
mention *v.* 提到，说到，谈到
minor *adj.* 较轻微的；较少的
modern *adj.* 现代的，时髦的
modest *adj.* 谦逊的，谦虚的
motivated *adj.* 有积极性的
necessary *adj.* 必需的，必要的
negative *adj.* 消极的；反面的，负面的
normal *adj.* 正常的，通常的
notice *v.* 察觉，注意
numerous *adj.* 许多的，众多的
observe *v.* 观察，监视
occasion *n.* 场合，时候
occupy *v.* 住(房子)等
odor *n.* 气味
opinion *n.* 意见，看法，主张
opportunity *n.* 机会，时机
oppose *v.* 反对，反抗
original *adj.* 新颖的，非模仿他人的
panic *n.* 恐慌，惊惶
perform *v.* 做，实施，进行
permanent *adj.* 耐久的
permit *v.* 允许，许可
persist *v.* 坚持不懈，坚持做
personal *adj.* 有关私人的，涉及隐私的
persuade *v.* 说服，劝服
pleasant *adj.* 令人愉快的，和蔼和亲的
popular *adj.* 广受欢迎的，得人心的
portion *n.* 一部分
positive *adj.* 怀有希望的，积极的
praise *v.* 赞扬，表扬
precious *adj.* 珍贵的，宝贵的，贵重的
predict *v.* 预言，预料
prepare *v.* 准备，预备
pretend *v.* 假装，佯装
prevent *v.* 阻止，阻挡，妨碍
previous *adj.* 以前的，先前的，先的
produce *n.* 生产；产生
progress *n.* 进步，上进
protect *v.* 保护，防护
provide *v.* 提供，给予，供给
public *adj.* 公共的，公众的
purpose *n.* 目的，意图
quarrel *n.* 争吵，口角
reaction *n.* 反应
realize *v.* 知道，明白，了解
recognize *v.* 认出
refer *v.* 提到，谈到
refuse *v.* 拒绝，回绝，拒不
regret *v.* 因…懊悔，因…后悔
relieved *adj.* 宽心的，宽慰的
request *n.* 要求，请求
require *v.* 需要，有赖于
resist *v.* 反抗，抵制，抗拒
resolve *v.* 决定，决意，打定主意
respect *n.* 尊重，敬重
reveal *v.* 透露
reverse *v.* 使反向，使倒转
rival *n.* 敌手，竞争对手
sample *n.* 样品，试样
satisfy *v.* 使满意，使满足
scarce *adj.* 罕见的，难得的，少见的
seldom *adj.* 不常的，很少的
select *v.* 选择，挑选
sensitive *adj.* 敏感的
separate *v.* 分隔，隔开
similar *adj.* 相似的，相仿的，类似的
sincere *adj.* (为人)诚实的，真挚的，忠实的
sociable *adj.* 好交际的，合群的
solution *n.* 解答
specific *adj.* 特别的，独特的
struggle *n.* 艰难，难事
stubborn *adj.* 顽固的，执拗的
succeed *v.* 成功，办妥，做成
sufficient *adj.* 足够的，充足的
suggest *v.* 建议，提议
support *v.* 给…力量，安慰，鼓励
suppose *v.* 料想，以为，认为
surround *v.* 围住，环绕
survive *v.* 活下来，幸存
suspect *v.* 认为，猜想，料想
talent *n.* 才干；天才，天资
tempt *v.* 引诱，诱惑
tension *n.* (精神上的)紧张
timid *adj.* 胆怯的，易受惊的
tolerate *v.* 容许，不干预
tradition *n.* 传统习俗，传统(思想)等
tremendous *adj.* 巨大的，极大的
uncertain *adj.* 不确定的，不确知的
unite *v.* 团结，融合
unusual *adj.* 独特的，奇异的
urge *n.* 强烈的欲望，冲动
vacant *adj.* 空着的，未使用的，未占用的
value *n.* 价值
victim *n.* 受害者
volunteer *n.* 自愿参加者，志愿者
weary *adj.* 疲劳的，疲倦的
wonder *v.* 想知道，觉得好奇



VOCABULARY PERFORMANCE CHART

Chapters

	Sentence Check 1	Sentence Check 2	Final Check		Adding One Word to an Item	Adding Two Words to an Item	Final Check
1				16			
2				17			
3				18			
4				19			
5				20			
6				21			
7				22			
8				23			
9				24			
10				25			
11				26			
12				27			
13				28			
14				29			
15				30			

Review Activities

	Test 1	Test 2 Part A	Test 2 Part B	Test 3 Part A	Test 3 Part B
Unit One					
Unit Two					
Unit Three					
Unit Four					
Unit Five					

英语词汇入门

“英语词汇学习丛书” 由美国知名的教材教辅图书出版社 Townsend Press 出版，是美国大学生使用最为广泛的扩大词汇的教学辅导图书之一。正如本丛书的编者所指出的那样，在美国一个学生的前途在某种程度上取决于他 / 她的词汇量的大小。对于我国广大的英语学习者来说，词汇学习当然是英语学习的一个重要方面。

本丛书共有 6 册。每册介绍 240-300 个在 TOEFL、GRE、SAT 等测试中经常出现的单词。本丛书的特点是引导学生根据上下文的语境，包括例证、同义、异义、类比等关系来理解单词，通过反复练习、多次使用来熟悉和记忆单词，从而摒弃死记硬背的学习方法。书中对每个关键单词提供的各类练习能让学生反复使用该单词达 10 次左右。此外，书中部分练习题的题型与 TOEFL、GRE、SAT 等美国常用入学考试的形式相似，对于我国有志于出国留学的学生熟悉题型也有一定的帮助。

《英语词汇入门》（*Vocabulary Basics*）为本丛书的第一册，书中提供的英语词汇练习适用于我国高中阶段和大学非英语专业初级阶段学生的水平，也可以用作 TOEFL 培训初级阶段的辅助教材。

Townsend Press 英语词汇学习丛书书目

Books in the Townsend Press Vocabulary Series: A Comprehensive Vocabulary Program

Vocabulary Basics	《英语词汇入门》
Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary	《英语词汇基础》
Building Vocabulary Skills	《英语词汇提高》
Improving Vocabulary Skills	《英语词汇扩展》
Advancing Vocabulary Skills	《英语词汇突破》
Advanced Word Power	《英语词汇飞跃》



ISBN 7-81095-455-5

9 787810 954556 >

定价：23.00 元